DIOCESAN FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT
(A GUIDE TO BEST PRACTICES)
The DFM (formerly DFI) was developed by the Committee on Budget and Finance (CBF) of the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops (USCCB), in conjunction with a sub-committee, the Accounting Practices Committee (APC), and it was initially approved by the full body of (Arch) bishops at its November, 2002 General Meeting. The DFM was authorized for publication by Msgr. William P. Fay, General Secretary, USCCB.

As this DFM is revised by the APC, revisions are reviewed and approved through the USCCB and the revised DFM is published on the USCCB website.

This manual is published as an aide to (Arch)diocesan Financial Officers, Religious Treasurers and other personnel responsible for the financial administration of (Arch)dioceses and religious institutions of the Roman Catholic Church in the United States. As mentioned above, the DFM was initially adopted in November, 2002. However, each year the APC updates the contents of the DFM for the approval of the CBF. The most recent update was drafted in November 2014. Its contents are based upon generally accepted accounting principles in the United States at the time of its annual updates.

The DFM is not intended to be a comprehensive document addressing all financial administration matters that might be encountered by (Arch)dioceses or religious institutions in the administration of their finances. Rather, it is intended to be a document that addresses and offers best practices in financial administration matters that could be considered unique to (Arch)dioceses and religious institutions. As such, it is recommended that the DFM be used in conjunction with other authoritative guidance. The APC has recommended Practitioner’s Publishing Company’s (PPC) Nonprofit Financial and Accounting Manual, in order to access guidance to accounting and financial reporting matters that are common to all nonprofit organizations. To obtain this Guide, call 1-800-431-9025, or go to www.ppcnet.com. Other authoritative guidance materials are commonly available.

The APC is a sub-committee comprised of (Arch)diocesan financial directors and officers, and treasurers of religious institutes that was formed by the CBF in 1981. The APC was formed for the purpose of monitoring, commenting upon and reporting upon accounting and financial reporting principles that are proposed and approved by regulators of such generally accepted principles in the United States. The members of the APC are aided in their mission by expert advisors from the accounting profession. The APC is the successor to the Ad Hoc Committee on (Arch)diocesan Financial Statements which was formed by the United States Catholic Conference, predecessor to the USCCB, in 1971. The DFI is the successor to these previous publications: Diocesan Accounting and Financial Reporting (1971); Accounting Principles and Reporting Practices for Churches and Church-Related Organizations (1981).
We offer our deep gratitude and profound appreciation to the members of the APC for their time and efforts in developing and maintaining this valuable resource to the (Arch)dioceses and religious institutions of our Church.

Msgr. J. Brian Bransfield,  
General Secretary, USCCB

Ms. Linda Hunt,  
Associate General Secretary, USCCB

Most Reverend Kevin J. Farrell, Bishop of Dallas  
Treasurer, USCCB

NOTES:

- Certain materials in Chapter III were used from the tax manual, *Income Taxes for Priests Only*, published by the National Federation of Priests’ Councils.
- The contents of this manual are based upon generally accepted accounting principles in the USA promulgated at the time of publication.

Copyright © 2002, United States Conference of Catholic Bishops, Inc., Washington, D.C. All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from an authorized representative of the copyright holder.
# Table of Contents

I. **Financial Management Issues** .................................................................................................................. 1  
   - Sample A: Code of Conduct ..................................................................................................................... 9  
   - Sample B: Conflicts of Interest/Private Inurements Policy ................................................................. 13  
   - Sample C: Whistleblower Policy ............................................................................................................. 16  
   - Sample D: Anti-Fraud Policy .................................................................................................................... 18  
   - Sample E: Audit Oversight Responsibilities of the Audit Committee (or (Arch)diocesan Finance Council) ........................................................................................................... 20

II. **Cemeteries** ......................................................................................................................................................... 23

III. **Compensation of Priests and the Dual Tax Status of Priests** ........................................................................ 27

IV. **Compensation of (Arch)diocesan Priests: Pension and Other Post-Retirement Benefits** ..................... 29

V. **Compensation of Religious** ...................................................................................................................... 34

VI. **Compensation of Lay Employees and Deacons of the Church** ............................................................. 38

VII. **(Arch)diocesan Payments Associated with Priestly Formation** ........................................................ 44

VIII. **Deposit and Loan Programs** ............................................................................................................... 47

IX. **(Arch)diocesan Finance Councils** ......................................................................................................... 55

X. **(Arch)diocesan Finance Officer** ............................................................................................................ 66

XI. **Federal Funding** ......................................................................................................................................... 67

XII. **Foundations and Endowments** ............................................................................................................. 73

XIII. **Fundraising, (Arch)diocesan Appeals and Gift Acceptance** ............................................................ 75

XIV. **Income Tax** ............................................................................................................................................. 81

XV. **Investments** .............................................................................................................................................. 99

XVI. **Property and Equipment** ..................................................................................................................... 101

XVII. **Records Retention** .................................................................................................................................. 110

XVIII. **Group Programs** ................................................................................................................................... 122

XIX. **School Tuition vs. Donation** ................................................................................................................ 123

XX. **National Special Collections** ............................................................................................................ 125

XXI. **Parish Financial Management** ............................................................................................................. 128  
   - Sample A: Parish Reporting Form ......................................................................................................... 130  
   - Sample B: Parish Finance Council Training ......................................................................................... 132  
   - Sample C: Parish Finance Council Guidelines ..................................................................................... 134  
   - Sample D: Internal Control Questionnaire ............................................................................................. 149  
   - Sample E: Parish Accounting Policies & Financial Reporting Standards ............................................. 155
I. Financial Management Issues

1. Introduction

The Church is responsible for the financial resources which have been entrusted to it. This responsibility includes safeguarding Church assets, exercising prudence in financial matters, accountability to those who provide monetary support to the Church and to regulatory authorities, and compliance with all civil regulations. As such, the Church is committed to the highest standards of fiscal integrity and accountability. Strong systems of internal controls are needed to safeguard assets by reducing the risk of fraud, misuse, waste or embezzlement. It is important that all (Arch)diocesan officials and all employees within a (Arch)diocese be sure that best financial practices are being followed. Best financial practices dictate that (Arch)diocesan organizations review their policies and procedures in light of the continuing developments and those recent developments outlined below.

The American Competitiveness and Corporate Accountability Act of 2002, commonly known as the Sarbanes-Oxley Act was enacted in response to several corporate and accounting scandals that occurred in 2001 and 2002. Its purpose is to rebuild trust in America’s corporate sector and promote stability in the financial markets. The law pertains primarily to public companies and addresses auditor independence, corporate responsibility for financial reports and internal controls, and management issues. Certain provisions of Sarbanes-Oxley apply to all organizations, including not-for-profits, because of preexisting law. The record retention provision and the whistle blower protection provisions apply to not-for-profit organizations, including churches. However, it behooves the Church to consider all of the Act’s provisions in developing best financial practices.

Not-for-profit organizations are fast becoming the focus of similar oversight measures. For example, California passed the Nonprofit Integrity Act of 2004 which addresses two broad areas of nonprofit activity: management and fundraising. While religious organizations are exempt from most of the provisions of this law, they are subject to its fundraising and compensation review provisions.

The Senate Finance Committee has been considering a host of recommendations intended to strengthen the not-for-profit sector’s transparency, management and accountability. Also, the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) has expanded its Form 990 regarding information to be included in the Form relating to a new or expanded section titled “Governance, Management, and Disclosures”. The remainder of this chapter addresses several financial management issues that are offered as advice to (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishops to be used in their (Arch)dioceses as they deem appropriate.

2. Internal Controls

The Committee on Budget and Finance of the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops (USCCB) has published a framework titled Internal Controls. This twenty-eight-page booklet includes chapters on the following topics:

- Internal Control: A Definition
- Internal Control: Relationships and Responsibilities
- Establishing Internal Controls: Specific Practices, Procedures, and Techniques
- Guidelines for an Internal Controls Review
- Fraud and Irregularities: Concepts, Examples, and Detection Rules
3. Fraud Prevention Programs and Controls

Guidance to help prevent and deter fraud can be found in Management Antifraud Programs and Controls (originally an exhibit to AU-C-240). This document was commissioned by the Fraud Task Force of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants’ (AICPA) Auditing Standards Board and has been issued to provide guidance to boards of directors, audit committees and management to prevent and deter fraud. It discusses how to evaluate the risks of fraud as well as implement the processes, procedures and controls needed to reduce fraud.

This 22 page document can be obtained at:

Its outline is:

- Introduction
- Creating a Culture of Honesty and High Ethics
- Evaluating Antifraud Processes and Controls
- Developing an Appropriate Oversight Process
- Other Information – Sample Code of Conduct, Code of Ethics
- Attachment 1
- Attachment 2

4. Communications of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit

AU-C Section 265, Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit establishes standards and provides guidance for auditors on communicating matters related to an entity’s internal control over financial reporting identified in an audit of financial statements. It is applicable whenever an auditor expresses an opinion on financial statements (including a disclaimer of opinion).

The GAO’s Government Auditing Standards, July 2007 Revision has updated Government Auditing Standard’s internal control terminology to be consistent with AU-C Section 265. As such, these definitions will be applied by auditors in A133 audits as well.

5. Audit Committee

An independent audit committee should be established, or those responsibilities should be assigned to the (Arch)diocesan finance council, if the finance council consists primarily of persons who are not (Arch)diocesan officials. An audit committee’s primary functions include oversight of the internal control structure, evaluating the independent auditors, discussing the audit results with the independent auditors, overseeing the whistle blower and anti-fraud policies, providing guidance in the prevention and reporting of fraud and reviewing compliance with the Code of Conduct. Members of the audit committee should have the necessary professional and technical background to deal with accounting and internal control matters.

The AICPA Audit Committee Toolkit: Not-for-Profit Organizations is a valuable publication for audit committees in performing their oversight function effectively and efficiently. The publication is available at: http://www.aicpa.org/interestareas/notforprofit/Pages/NFP.aspx.

Each (Arch)diocese should consider having an “audit committee financial expert” on its Audit Committee or Finance Council. For public companies, the SEC defines such a person as having the following attributes:
1. An understanding of generally accepted accounting principles and financial statements;

2. The ability to assess the general application of such principles in connection with the accounting for estimates, accruals and reserves;

3. Experience preparing, auditing, analyzing or evaluating financial statements that present a breadth and level of complexity of accounting issues that are generally comparable to the breadth and complexity of issues that can reasonably be expected to be raised by the (Arch)diocese’s financial statements, or experience actively supervising one or more persons engaged in such activities;

4. An understanding of internal controls and procedures for financial reporting; and

5. An understanding of audit committee functions.

The need for qualified people on audit committees at a (Arch)diocese is just as important as it is for a public company.

A sample charter addressing the Audit Oversight Responsibilities of the Audit Committee (or (Arch)diocesan Finance Council) is attached to this chapter as Sample E.

6. Compensation Committee

A best practice is that each (Arch)diocese is to establish a compensation committee or designate the finance council to administer the pay and benefits of highly compensated employees. If a separate committee is established then such committee should work under the auspices of the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council. Highly compensated employees are those whose total compensation equals or exceeds approximately $120,000 per annum as determined by the IRS for 2015 and will remain at $120,000 for 2016.

A compensation committee is composed of at least three (3) individuals, all of whom are deemed independent, having no conflicts of interest. The compensation committee is responsible for assuring that the conditions of the rebuttable presumption (See Chapter X – Income Taxes) are met, that compensation is administered consistently within the (Arch)diocese and that the related policies and practices are consistently applied.

The committee should meet at least two times each year. At one meeting the policies and procedures should be reviewed and approved. At the second meeting compensation for the coming year should be reviewed, adjusted as necessary and approved; and the current year’s compensation reviewed to assure that it has been paid in accord with the prior year’s approval or any subsequent approval. Decisions must be based on appropriate comparability data and contemporaneous documentation of the committee’s deliberations and decisions should be made.

Finally, a viable compensation committee should also have access to and the authority to engage appropriate compensation consultants and/or attorneys to support the work of the committee.

7. Conflict of Interest Policy

Each (Arch)diocese should establish a conflict of interest policy. Although such a policy cannot prevent illegal or unethical behavior, it will help establish and create a proper control environment. The following
items should be considered when developing a conflict of interest policy.

- It should be decided who is to monitor and ensure compliance with the conflict of interest policy. It should also be decided which personnel are required to provide a written acknowledgment of compliance with the conflict of interest policy and disclose all potential conflicts of interest.

- Dealings with the diocese that appear to have dual interests or a conflict of interest should be evaluated closely (e.g., transactions with entities in which a (Arch)diocesan employee or volunteer has a direct or indirect financial interest, or support being provided to other organizations with which an employee or volunteer is directly associated).

- Whether a matter is of significant importance to constitute a conflict of interest should be determined by the (Arch)bishop or his designee (e.g. legal counsel).

An example of a policy statement is attached as Exhibit B.

8. **Whistleblower Policy**

A strong preventive and detective measure against fraud in any organization is the opportunity for employees and other constituents to anonymously report suspected wrongdoing (whistle blowing) without the threat of retaliation. Each (Arch)diocese should consider adopting a policy to report wrong-doing (commonly referred to as a whistleblower policy) and developing procedures to address “whistleblower” complaints regarding ethics, integrity, internal controls, and accounting or auditing matters. A sample policy to report wrong-doing is attached to this chapter as Exhibit C.

9. **Anti-Fraud Policy**

Each (Arch)diocese should have an anti-fraud policy that is clear, concise and documented. As such, each (Arch)diocese should consider drafting a written anti-fraud policy. The policy should state that fraud is not tolerated and stipulate that the consequences of participating in fraudulent acts include, but are not limited to, termination, and civil and criminal prosecution. It should also define fraudulent actions and address how to report suspected cases of fraud. A sample anti-fraud policy is attached to this chapter as Exhibit D.

10. **Records Retention Policy**

Each (Arch)diocese should have a records retention policy and procedures. See chapter XVI for additional information on record retention guidelines.

11. **Code of Conduct**

Each (Arch)diocese should establish a written Code of Conduct and promulgate it to the people of the (Arch)diocese. A Code of Conduct memorializes in a clear and distinct manner appropriate behavior and practices that will be followed by all clergy, religious, lay employees and volunteers. A sample Code of Conduct is attached to this chapter as Exhibit A.

12. **Internal Audits**

Each (Arch)diocese should implement some level of internal audit. Such a function is a very important component of a sound internal control environment for parishes, schools and other (Arch)diocesan entities.
The primary role of the internal audit function is to aid pastors and others in fulfilling their canonical and legal responsibilities. An effective internal audit will help safeguard the assets of a parish, review recordkeeping, internal control, accounting and financial reporting of the parish, identify areas of improvement and report findings and observations to the pastor, parish finance council and the audit or accounting committee of the (Arch)diocese. Ideally, the internal auditors serve as pro-active, cooperative management advisory partners to the pastor. A well-developed internal audit team will function most effectively as consultants rather than compliance monitors, adding value through reviewing the parish business operation and making recommendations for improvement.

An internal audit also provides an independent review and verification that an organization is complying with laws and policies of the (Arch)diocese and is making economical and efficient use of its resources. An internal audit assists management by providing independent and objective analysis of activities and controls. Internal audits are an objective review of the policies and systems a parish, school or other (Arch)diocesan entity has in place that sometimes are never tested. Thus, an internal audit is designed to determine whether internal controls are in place and functioning so as to safeguard assets, provide reasonable assurance that financial activities are being properly recorded, summarized and reported, and provide reasonable assurance of compliance with (Arch)diocesan policies and civil regulations.

The following models, or a combination thereof, are suggested as options to achieve an effective internal audit function, depending upon the financial resources available. These three models represent three different staffing alternatives. When only minimal financial resources are available for the internal audit function, the scope of work performed could be limited to the most high-risk entities and/or activities. The determination of the frequency of audits and the scope of the work should be a function of general and specific risk analysis, considering such factors as parish size, staffing, volume of activity, history, etc.

**Staffing a Department**

It is recommended as a best practice that (Arch)dioceses hire internal audit staff to routinely visit parishes to assess financial management, internal controls and adherence to (Arch)diocesan policy and civil regulation.

**Outsourcing to Qualified CPA Firms**

If a lack of funds prevents hiring internal audit staff, a (Arch)diocese could consider outsourcing the internal audit function through contracting with independent Certified Public Accountants (CPA’s) to perform an internal review and agreed upon procedures that will give limited assurance of the adequacy of financial management. The cost of the CPA services could be shared or paid by the individual parishes.

**The Use of Appropriately Qualified/Credentialed Volunteers**

A third alternative is to consider recruiting volunteers, such as retired CPA’s, accountants or auditors to visit parishes and conduct financial reviews. The (Arch)diocese should establish criteria/credentials for those volunteers, and should select the volunteer auditors. Parish Finance Council members should not serve in the capacity of reviewing their own parish financial operations.

In all of the above staffing models, the (Arch)diocese should develop the work program utilized in performing internal audits. Furthermore, the individuals performing the internal audits should report to the chief fiscal officer of the (Arch)diocese, as he/she typically has the best understanding of parish financial issues. This does not typically create a conflict of interest because the chief fiscal officer of the
(Arch)diocese does not have direct responsibility for parish, school or other entity accounting.

Conducting internal audits of all parishes, schools and entities on an annual basis represents a desirable goal; however, it may not be feasible in many (Arch)dioceses due to financial and/or personnel constraints. A (Arch)diocese can have an effective internal audit process with less frequent internal audits if a proper risk assessment process is utilized.


A recap of recommended standards for good financial management contained in this chapter and elsewhere in this manual follows:

A. Adopt a Code of Conduct (Sample A) that:
   1. addresses principles of ethics and integrity for all Church personnel,
   2. stipulates guidelines for working with minor children,
   3. addresses conduct for pastoral counselors and spiritual directors,
   4. forbids harassment,
   5. identifies prohibited political activities, addresses confidentiality, and identifies a mechanism for reporting potential violations, and
   6. dictates non-tolerance of retaliation.

B. Adopt a Conflict of Interest Policy (Sample B) that:
   1. requires reporting of potential or real conflicts of interest;
   2. prohibits gifts and favors of value that could influence, or be construed as influencing a decision or obligation in the performance of one’s duties;
   3. prohibits board members from soliciting business or favors and from voting on decisions that may constitute a conflict of interest or could give an appearance of a conflict of interest, and
   4. prohibits board members from influencing any activity that could confer a benefit on such member or anyone in the member’s family or business.

C. Adopt a Whistleblower Policy (Sample C) that:
   1. requires reporting of violations of civil and criminal laws or of the Code of Ethics by Church personnel,
   2. stipulates that all reports will be treated in confidence as much as the (Arch)diocese’s duty to investigate allows,
   3. stipulates that all reported violations of the Code of Ethics will be investigated, and
   4. prohibits retaliation against a person who makes a complaint or provides information regarding any reasonably perceived reportable activity.

D. Adopt an Anti-fraud policy (Sample D) that:
   1. clearly states that fraud or financial misconduct is not tolerated and that the prevention of fraud or financial misconduct is the responsibility of all personnel involved in Church
administration, and—

2. stipulates that all suspected cases of fraud or financial misconduct are to be reported and provides assurance against recrimination,

3. defines actions constituting fraud or financial misconduct, outlines reporting and investigating procedures, and stipulates that fraudulent acts and financial misconduct will be subject to disciplinary action, up to and including termination and civil and criminal prosecution.

E. Adopt an Audit Services Pre-approval and Independence Policy that:

1. requires the audit committee or (Arch)diocesan Finance Council to pre-approve all services to be provided by an audit firm and the fees for those services,

2. precludes specific services that could impair the auditor’s independence,

3. considers audit partner rotation after seven consecutive years of service,

4. stipulates minimum reporting standards by auditors to the audit committee or (Arch)diocesan Finance Council.

F. Establish a (Arch)diocesan Finance Council (see Chapter 9 of this manual) with a written charter to monitor (Arch)diocesan finances and to fulfill the requirements of canon law. Among other responsibilities, the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council, which is advisory to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop, should be required to recommend to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop:

1. approval of the hiring of an independent audit firm,

2. approval of the budget of the (Arch)diocese,

3. approval of the annual financial report,

4. responses to the required communications from the audit firm,

5. approval of asset allocation ranges for (Arch)diocesan investments, and

6. approval of (Arch)diocesan assessments and all transactions requiring Finance Council approval by canon law.

G. Submit an annual Representation Statement to the metropolitan archbishop (or senior suffragan bishop) signed by the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council members, the bishop and chief financial officer certifying that the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council executed its responsibilities and specifying meeting dates during the previous fiscal year and since yearend.

H. Have independent audits performed for all significant (Arch)diocesan entities.

I. Publish the annual financial report of the (Arch)diocese (including financial statements and footnotes, and the report of the independent auditor) so that it is available to all registered households.

J. Adopt an Investment Policy Statement and Socially Responsible Investment Guidelines that are reviewed periodically.

K. Establish an Investment Committee with a standard charter to review and approve investment policies, monitor investments and ensure compliance with the investment policy and socially responsible investment guidelines.

L. Parish Financial Management – See Chapter XX.
M. Issue budgeting and financial reporting guidelines for all (Arch)diocesan parishes, schools and agencies, stipulating that:

1. budgets are to be prepared annually,
2. the pastor and finance council are to review actual revenues and expenses against budgeted amounts on a regular basis,
3. periodic financial reports are to be issued to the parish council and an annual financial report is to be issued to the entire parish community, and
4. the financial reports and supporting schedules required by the (Arch)diocese are to be submitted timely.

N. Adopt a Clergy Remuneration Policy that stipulates compensation levels for all clergy, delineates travel, housing, and meal expenses that are the responsibility of the parish, and summarizes benefit plans available to (Arch)diocesan priests.

O. Issue a records retention schedule for financial records that is consistent with the guidelines published by the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops.

P. Require compliance with (Arch)diocesan guidelines to open all bank and investment accounts.

Q. Establish standard procurement procedures and require competitive bids when hiring an outside vendor/contractor when the total cost exceeds a specified dollar amount.

R. Establish guidelines for new acquisitions and construction or renovation projects that address the necessary planning, financial requirements, fundraising, and construction process.

S. Establish standard cash collection count procedures that require multiple unrelated counters, the use of locked or sealed bags for storing and transporting deposits, and the use of standard count sheets that are signed by all counters.

T. Codify all financial policies and procedures for parishes, missions and schools in a manual that is available through the internet or intranet.

U. Conduct annual workshops for parish finance council members, parish financial staff and pastors that address timely issues pertaining to parish financial policies and procedures and civil regulations.

V. Perform parish financial reviews or internal audits designed to test the existence and effectiveness of parish internal accounting controls and compliance with (Arch)diocesan policies and civil regulations.
Sample A: Code of Conduct

Insert (Arch)diocesan Mission Statement and statement as to importance of complying with the Code of Conduct.

All clergy, religious, lay employees and volunteers (representatives) of the (Arch)diocese, its parishes (and parish schools), (Arch)diocesan high schools and other (Arch)diocesan entities must, at all times, comply with all applicable laws and regulations. The (Arch)diocese will not condone the activities of those who achieve results through violation of the law or unethical or immoral business dealings. This includes any payments for illegal acts, indirect contributions, rebates, bribery and other similar types of activity.

All conduct should be clearly above the minimum standards required by law and expected by the Church. Accordingly, all representatives must ensure that their actions cannot be interpreted as being, in any way, in contravention of laws, regulations or principles governing the activities and mission of any (Arch)diocesan entity. Representatives that are uncertain about the application or interpretation of any legal requirements should refer the matter to their supervisor, who, if necessary, should seek the advice of the (Arch)bishop’s Office or his designee(s).

General Conduct

All representatives of (Arch)diocesan entities are expected to conduct themselves in a professional, Christian, businesslike manner. Drinking, illegal drug use, gambling, fighting, swearing, and similar unprofessional activities are strictly prohibited while on the job. Representatives must not engage in harassment, (including but not limited to sexual harassment), discrimination, or retaliation or conduct themselves in a way that could be construed as such, for example, by using inappropriate language or jokes, keeping or posting inappropriate materials in their work areas, or accessing inappropriate materials on workplace computers.

Conflicts of Interest

All representatives of (Arch)diocesan entities are expected to perform their duties conscientiously, honestly, and in accordance with the best interests of the Church. Representatives must not use their position or the knowledge gained as a result of their position for private or personal advantage. Regardless of the circumstances, if a representative senses that a course of action they have pursued, are presently pursuing, or are contemplating pursuing may involve them in a conflict of interest, they should immediately communicate all the facts to their supervisor.

Outside Activities of Employees

All Church employees are called always to act in a manner that is consistent with Catholic principles and teachings, and have a serious responsibility for good public relations. Their readiness to help parishes, schools, and other charitable and educational activities is encouraged. Employees must, however, avoid acquiring any business interest or committing to any other activity that would, or would appear to:
• Create an excessive demand upon their time and attention, thus depriving their (Arch)diocesan employer of their best efforts on the job, or
• Create a conflict of interest—an obligation, interest, or distraction—that may interfere with the independent exercise of judgment in their employer’s best interest.

Employee Relationships With Clients and Suppliers

Employees should avoid investing in or acquiring a financial interest for their own accounts in any business that has a contractual relationship with the (Arch)diocese, or that provides goods or services, or both to the (Arch)diocese, if such investment or interest could influence or create the impression of influencing their decisions in the performance of their duties on behalf of the (Arch)diocese.

Gifts, Entertainment, and Favors

Representatives must not accept entertainment, gifts, or personal favors that could influence, or appear to influence, Church business decisions in favor of any person or company with whom or with which we are likely to have business dealings. Similarly, representatives must not accept any other preferential treatment under these circumstances because it may be perceived to place them under an obligation. Meals, entertainment, holiday gifts and similar items that are infrequent and of modest value are not considered violations of this Code of Conduct. In cases of doubt, one should discuss the matter with their supervisor.

Kickbacks and Secret Commissions

Employees may not receive payment or compensation of any kind, except as authorized under their employer’s remuneration policies. In particular, the acceptance of kickbacks and secret commissions from suppliers or others is strictly prohibited. Any breach of this rule may result in immediate termination and prosecution to the fullest extent of the law.

(Arch)diocesan Funds and Other Assets

Representatives who have access to (Arch)diocesan entity funds in any form must follow the prescribed policies and procedures for recording, handling, and protecting those funds as detailed in the (Arch)diocese’s and parishes, etc. policies, manuals and related materials. Policies and procedures are in place to prevent fraud and dishonesty. If an employee becomes aware of any evidence of fraud and dishonesty, they should immediately advise the designated personnel so they can promptly investigate the matter.

When a representative’s position requires spending (Arch)diocesan entity funds or incurring any reimbursable personal expenses, that individual must use good judgment on the entity’s behalf to ensure that good value is received for such expenditures.

(Arch)diocesan entity funds and all other assets of an (Arch)diocesan entity are for that entity’s purposes only and not for personal benefit.
Records and Communications

Accurate and reliable records of many kinds are necessary to meet various legal and financial obligations, and to manage the affairs of (Arch)diocesan entities. An entity’s books and records must reflect all business transactions in an accurate and timely manner. The employees responsible for accounting and any other record keeping must exercise diligence in fulfilling these responsibilities. Representatives must not make or participate in making any false record or communication of any kind, whether internal or external, including but not limited to:

- False expense, attendance, financial, or similar reports and statements
- False advertising, deceptive practices, or other misleading representations

Dealing With Outside People and (Arch)dioceses

Representatives must take care to separate their personal roles from their official positions when communicating on matters not involving (Arch)diocesan entity business. Employees must not use (Arch)diocesan entity identification, stationery, supplies, and equipment for personal or political matters.

When communicating publicly on matters that involve any (Arch)diocesan entity’s business, representatives must not presume to speak for the entity or (Arch)diocese on any topic, unless they are certain that the views they express are those of the entity, and it is the entity’s desire that such views be publicly disseminated.

When dealing with anyone, including public officials, outside the (Arch)diocese, representatives must take care not to compromise the integrity or damage the reputation of either the (Arch)bishop or the (Arch)diocesan entity, or any individual, business, or government body.

Prompt Communications

In all matters relevant to parishioners, churches, schools, government authorities, the public and others in the (Arch)diocese, all representatives must make every effort to achieve complete, accurate, and timely communications—responding promptly and courteously to all proper requests for information and to all complaints.

Privacy and Confidentiality

When handling financial and personal information about the (Arch)diocese, parishes, parishioners, or others with whom we have dealings, representatives must observe the following principles:

1. Collect, use, and retain only the personal information necessary for the business. Whenever possible, obtain any relevant information directly from the person concerned. Use only reputable and reliable sources to supplement this information.
2. Retain information only for as long as necessary or as required by law. Protect the physical security of this information.

3. Limit internal access to personal information to those with a legitimate business reason for seeking that information. Use only personal information for the purposes for which it was originally obtained. Obtain the consent of the person concerned before externally disclosing any personal information, unless legal processes or contractual obligation provides otherwise.
Sample B: Conflicts of Interest/Private Inurement Policy

Purpose

The purpose of this conflicts of interest and private inurement policy is to protect the (Arch)diocese's interest when it is contemplating entering into a transaction or arrangement that might benefit the interests of private individuals, including but not limited to employees and individuals performing work on behalf of the (Arch)diocese and other persons in a position to influence the affairs of the (Arch)diocese. This policy is intended to supplement but not replace any applicable state laws governing conflicts of interest applicable to non-profit and charitable corporations. This policy should be distributed to existing and future executives, officers, trustees, directors, and members of advisory boards, councils and committees.

Introduction

Non-profit charitable, religious, and educational organizations obtain their tax-exempt status under the theory that they perform valuable services for society and lessen the burdens of government. If a tax-exempt organization allows its money or other property to be used for private rather than public gain (i.e., for "private inurement" or "private benefit"), then it risks losing its exemption. In addition, under the "intermediate sanctions" provisions of the Internal Revenue Code, "disqualified persons" such as (Arch)bishops, CFOs, other (Arch)diocesan officials, board members, major donors doing work for the (Arch)diocese, etc., who receive "excess benefits" are subject to an excise tax ranging from 25% to 200%, depending on the circumstances. Furthermore, any organizational manager who knowingly facilitates such an excess benefit is subject to a 10% tax. In light of these IRS restrictions and, more importantly, in order to assist the (Arch)diocese in fulfilling its responsibilities to act as a competent and trustworthy steward of church goods, the (Arch)diocese has developed this policy.

Identifying a Private Inurement or Private Benefit Problem

In brief, "private inurement" is the payment or diversion of an exempt organization's assets to its officials, officers, directors, employees, relatives, friends, major donors, or others in a special relationship to the organization who can influence or control the policy or the day-to-day activities of the organization for less than full and adequate consideration. It is a broad concept that can exist in a variety of transactions under a variety of circumstances. Private inurement also extends to the use of organizational assets for "private benefits" such as sales, leasing, construction contracts, service transactions, etc., at other than fair market value or the exploitation of the exempt organization for the benefit of a private business (e.g., "sweetheart deals," promotional schemes, and/or giveaways to private individuals or businesses). Thus, under IRS regulations, a private benefit is similar to, but broader than, private inurement.

To avoid a material private inurement or benefit in the types of transactions described above, the particular (Arch)diocesan parish, school, or agency must enter into transactions for its benefit, rather than for a private party's benefit, and exercise due diligence to ensure that the proposed transaction is fair and reasonable such that under the circumstances the organization could not have obtained a more advantageous arrangement with reasonable effort. In addition to screening proposed transactions through the applicable councils, boards, or trustees, care should be taken to follow (Arch)diocesan policies and procedures pertaining to the signing of contracts.
Conflicts of Interest

A conflict of interest may exist when persons employed by the "(Arch)diocese" (i.e., the Central Administrative Office, parishes, schools, (Arch)diocesan agencies, and/or affiliated entities), those volunteers of the (Arch)diocese holding trusteeships or other management authority, or those serving on advisory or consultative boards, councils or committees have a direct or indirect financial interest, as defined below.

Financial Interest

A person has a "financial interest" if the person has, directly or indirectly, through business, investment, or family (including spouses; brothers or sisters; spouses of brothers or sisters; ancestors; children, grandchildren, and great grandchildren; and spouses of children, grandchildren, and great grandchildren), any one of the following:

a. An ownership or investment interest in any entity with which the (Arch)diocese has a transaction or arrangement;

b. A compensation arrangement with the (Arch)diocese or with any entity or individual with whom the (Arch)diocese has a transaction or arrangement;

c. A potential ownership or investment interest with, or compensation arrangement with, any entity or individual with whom the (Arch)diocese is negotiating a transaction or arrangement. Compensation includes direct and indirect remuneration as well as gifts or favors that are substantial in nature.

Duty to Disclose

In connection with any actual or possible conflict of interest, an interested person must disclose the existence and nature of his or her financial interest and all material facts. Reports should be made to (Arch)diocesan personnel as designated by the (Arch)bishop, i.e., vicar general, chancellor, attorney, chief financial officer or internal auditor. Reports should include relevant information that is discernible.

Investigation

The designated (Arch)diocesan personnel shall be responsible for a thorough and expeditious investigation of the actual/possible conflict of interest.

Proposed decisions on disposition of a case will be discussed with the (Arch)bishop or his designee(s). The results of all reported conflicts of interest and the final resolution shall be reported to the Audit Committee.
Subsequent Conflicts and Disclosures

Notwithstanding previous disclosures of actual or potential conflicts of interest, an individual shall make a new disclosure of conflicts when any matter involving the conflict of interest arises for discussion or action. In the event that an individual is uncertain whether an actual or potential conflict of interest exists, the individual should make disclosure of the circumstances that may give rise to an actual or potential conflict.

Confidential or Privileged Information

Information known to be confidential that is acquired by individuals in the course of employment or association with the (Arch)diocese and its affiliated entities shall be used only for the benefit and purposes of the (Arch)diocese. Individuals shall neither disclose confidential information outside the scope of their authorized duties nor utilize their position or association with the (Arch)diocese for personal identification or advantage, although there may be instances, based on the use of careful discretion and judgment, where incidental use of the association with the (Arch)diocese may be appropriate.
Sample C: Whistleblower Policy

Sample Policy to Report Wrong-doing

Federal and/or State regulatory requirements for establishing whistleblower reporting programs and for the protection of employees from retaliatory actions should be considered in developing and implementing a policy to report wrong-doing such as the example that follows.

(Arch)diocese of Xxx Policy to Report Wrong-doing General

The (Arch)diocese of Xxx Code of Conduct requires all representatives of the Church, including clergy, religious, directors, and other volunteers, and lay employees, to observe high standards of business and personal ethics in the conduct of their duties and responsibilities. All representatives of the Church must practice honesty and integrity in fulfilling their responsibilities and comply with all applicable laws and regulations.

The objectives of the Policy to Report Wrong-doing are to establish policies and procedures for:

- The submission of concerns regarding questionable financial or legal matters, violations and suspected violations of the Code of Conduct, Code of Canon Law and other concerns by the stakeholders of the Church, on a confidential and anonymous basis;
- The receipt, retention, and treatment of complaints received by the organization;
- The protection of anyone reporting concerns from retaliatory actions.

Reporting Responsibility

Each representative of the (Arch)diocese of Xxx has an obligation to report in accordance with this policy (a) questionable or improper accounting or auditing matters, (b) violations and suspected violations of (Arch)diocese’s Code of Conduct and (c) other financial, legal or canonical concerns (hereinafter collectively referred to as Concerns).

Reports of Concerns should be made to (Arch)diocesan personnel as designated by the (Arch)bishop, i.e., vicar general, chancellor, attorney, chief financial officer or internal auditor. All Concerns are to be reported as soon as possible. Reports of Concerns should include all relevant information about the suspected act, including any material evidence that exists.

No Retaliation

This policy is intended to encourage and enable stakeholders to raise Concerns within the Organization for investigation and appropriate action. With this goal in mind, no stakeholder who, in good faith, reports a Concern shall be subject to retaliation or, in the case of an employee, adverse employment consequences. Moreover, anyone who retaliates against someone who has reported a Concern in good faith is subject to discipline up to and including dismissal from their position within the Church.

Investigation

The designated (Arch)diocesan personnel shall be responsible for a thorough and expeditious investigation of the reported Concern.
Proposed decisions on disposition of a case will be discussed with the (Arch)bishop or his designee(s). The results of all reported Concern investigations and the final resolution shall be reported to the audit committee.

**Acting in Good Faith**

Anyone reporting a Concern must act in good faith and have reasonable grounds for believing the information disclosed indicates an improper accounting or auditing practice, or a violation of the Code of Conduct or other management policies. The act of making allegations that prove to be unsubstantiated, and that prove to have been made maliciously, recklessly, or with the foreknowledge that the allegations are false, will be viewed as a serious disciplinary offense and may result in discipline, up to and including dismissal from their position with the Church. Such conduct may also give rise to other actions, including civil lawsuits.

**Confidentiality**

Reports of Concerns, and investigations pertaining thereto, shall be kept confidential to the extent possible, consistent with the need to conduct an adequate investigation. Disclosure of reports of Concerns to individuals not involved in the investigation will be viewed as a serious disciplinary offense and may result in discipline, up to and including termination of the violator’s position in the Church. Such conduct may also give rise to other actions, including civil lawsuits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample Whistleblower Tracking Report</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Date Submitted</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Documentation**

Before using this sample, the (Arch)diocese should review any applicable state or local laws or regulations, and the appropriate rules promulgated by other relevant regulatory bodies, if any.
Sample D: Anti-Fraud Policy

Policy Statement

The (Arch)diocese of Xxx promotes a culture of honest and accountable stewardship of God’s gifts. There is a significant responsibility associated with being stewards of the temporal resources of the church: responsibility to safeguard the Church’s assets, to exercise prudence in financial matters, to be accountable to those who provide monetary support to the Church, and to comply with all civil regulations.

Fraud is not tolerated. The prevention of fraud is the responsibility of all clergy, religious, lay employees, trustees, finance council members and other volunteers involved in church administration by adherence to (Arch)diocese policies and procedures. The (Arch)diocese expects that any suspected case of fraud will be reported, and provides assurance against recrimination. Persons found to have participated in fraudulent acts will be subject to disciplinary action, including termination, and civil and criminal prosecution.

Actions Constituting Fraud

The (Arch)diocese of Xxx defines fraud as the intentional misuse or misappropriation of an (Arch)diocesan entity’s resources or assets for the personal enrichment of the perpetrator or others. Fraud also includes the intentional false representation or concealment of a material fact relating to the misuse or misappropriation of an (Arch)diocesan entity’s resources or assets. Additionally, fraud also includes any intentional falsification of, or misrepresentation in, financial statements. Actions constituting fraud include, but are not limited to:

- misappropriation of funds, securities, supplies or other assets;
- impropriety in the handling or reporting of money or financial transactions;
- breach of fiduciary duty, including disclosing confidential information to outside parties;
- seeking anything of value from contractors, vendors or persons providing (or seeking to provide) services/materials to an (Arch)diocesan entity for one’s or another’s personal benefit;
- accepting anything of value from contractors, vendors or persons providing (or seeking to provide) services/materials to an (Arch)diocesan entity for one’s or another’s personal benefit, in violation of the (Arch)diocesan Conflict of Interest Policy;
- bribery;
- inappropriate use of computer systems or other property of the (Arch)diocesan entity;
- unauthorized destruction or removal of records, furniture, fixtures and equipment;
- intentional falsification of, or misrepresentation in, financial statements; and
- any dishonest act.

Reporting Fraud to the (Arch)diocese

Suspected fraud should be reported to (Arch)diocesan personnel as designated by the (Arch)bishop, i.e., vicar general, chancellor, attorney, chief financial officer or internal auditor. All suspected frauds are to be reported as soon as possible. Failure to promptly report suspected acts of fraud may jeopardize the (Arch)diocese’s ability to recover stolen funds and/or property, or to correct improperly prepared financial statements on a timely basis. Reports of suspected fraud should include all relevant information about the suspected act, including any material evidence that exists.
Investigation

The designated (Arch)diocesan personnel shall be responsible for a thorough and expeditious investigation of the suspected fraud. Unless the report was anonymous, the person submitting the initial report will receive confirmation indicating that their report was received and that the subsequent investigation is confidential. That person may or may not be contacted during the investigation.

Proposed decisions on disposition of a case will be decided by the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop or his designee(s). The results of all reported fraud investigations and the final resolution of all confirmed acts of financial fraud shall be reported to the Audit Committee/Finance Council.

Records Retention

Fraud investigation files should be retained in accordance with guidelines established by the (Arch)diocesan attorney.

Confidentiality

Information about cases will be disclosed to those parties with a legitimate need to know. All parties with knowledge of such cases are to maintain confidentiality in order to avoid damaging the reputations of persons suspected but subsequently found innocent of wrongful conduct, and to protect the (Arch)diocese from potential civil liability.
Sample E: Audit Oversight Responsibilities of the Audit Committee (or (Arch)diocesan Finance Council)

Summary

The (Arch)diocesan Finance Council has a responsibility to oversee the financial reporting process of (Arch)diocesan entities and to advise the (Arch)bishop in matters pertaining to financial reporting and the annual financial audit.

However, it is not the responsibility of the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council to provide expert assurance regarding the financial statements or the annual financial audit. Furthermore, (Arch)diocesan officials are responsible for the preparation of the financial statements, for the fair presentation in the financial statements of the entities’ financial position, results of its activities and cash flows in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, and for the design and implementation of its systems of internal accounting control.

Furthermore, the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council is advisory to the (Arch)bishop, in most matters (see Chapter VIII), and discharges its duty by (1) acting in good faith; (2) utilizing the care that an ordinary prudent person in a like position would exercise under similar conditions; and (3) acting in a manner that they reasonably believe to be in the best interests of the (Arch)diocese.

The inquiries, discussions and reviews required in the following key responsibilities are to be performed by the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council or may be wholly or partially performed by an (Arch)diocesan Audit Committee. However, if any such matters are assigned to an Audit Committee, the Finance Council should require the Audit Committee to report fully all significant matters or findings to the Finance Council.

Key Responsibilities

Systems of Internal Accounting Controls

1. Inquire whether (Arch)diocesan officials are setting the appropriate tone by communicating the importance of internal controls so that all individuals possess an understanding of their roles and responsibilities.

2. Inquire whether (Arch)diocesan officials are using independent firms to review computer systems and applications, the security of such systems and applications, and the contingency plan for processing financial information in the event of a systems breakdown.

3. Discuss with the independent auditors any internal control recommendations made during the course of their audit and inquire from both the outside auditors and (Arch)diocesan officials as to whether internal control recommendations identified by the independent auditors have been implemented.

4. Inquire of the independent auditors, (Arch)diocesan officials and legal counsel about any suspected or confirmed fraud, illegal acts, or deficiencies in internal controls.
5. Regarding complaints pertaining to accounting and auditing matters:
   a. Inquire whether procedures have been established for the confidential, anonymous submission by employees of concerns regarding questionable accounting and auditing matters; and
   b. Review the receipt and treatment of complaints received regarding accounting or auditing matters that were submitted by any party, internal or external to the organization.

_Compliance with laws and regulations_

1. Review the findings of any examinations by regulatory agencies.
2. Review with counsel any legal matters that could have a significant impact on the financial statements.

_Compliance with Code of Conduct and other management policies_

1. Ensure that a policy addressing ethical conduct is formalized in writing and that it is communicated to all employees and volunteers. It is recommended that (Arch)diocesan employees annually sign statements acknowledging that they understand and are complying with the policy.
2. Ensure that whistleblower and anti-fraud policies are formalized in writing and that they are communicated to all employees and volunteers. It is recommended that (Arch)diocesan employees annually sign statements acknowledging that they understand and are complying with the policy.
3. Periodically obtain updates from management and general counsel regarding compliance with the code of conduct.
4. Periodically obtain the results of all reported fraud and whistleblower investigations.
5. Inquire whether conflict of interest forms have been received from appropriate officials and reviewed for conflict issues.

_Financial Reporting_

Before the audited financial statements are issued to the public, meet with (Arch)diocesan officials and the independent auditors to review the annual financial statements and the results of the audit. This meeting should take place not later than approximately four months after the end of the fiscal year. Ask (Arch)diocesan officials and the independent auditors about significant risks and exposures, the accounting and disclosure of these risks and exposures in the annual financial statements, and plans to minimize such risks in the future. Also, ask the auditors their assessment of the quality of accounting principles, the degree of reasonableness of estimates and about other significant judgments made by (Arch)diocesan officials in preparing the financial statements and disclosures. Ask the independent auditors to report on and to discuss the following:
a. All changes to significant accounting policies and practices used by the (Arch)diocese; including critical accounting estimates, and how current and anticipated future events impact those determinations;

b. All changes in alternative treatments (accounting and disclosure) of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles for policies and practices related to material items that have been discussed with (Arch)diocesan officials, including the ramifications of the use of such alternatives and the treatment preferred by the auditors; and

c. Other material written communications between the auditors and (Arch)diocesan officials. The following are examples, not all-inclusive, of written communications that should be reviewed:

   i. Schedules of material unadjusted differences and a listing of material adjustments and reclassifications not recorded, if any, for all entities;
   ii. (Arch)diocesan managements’ representation letter for the audit of the financial statements;
   iii. Reports on observations and recommendations on internal controls;
   iv. The engagement letter for the audit of the financial statements;
   v. The audit firm’s independence in relation to all (Arch)diocesan entities; and
   vi. The final billing for services rendered, if different than the pre-approved amount.

**Independent Auditors**

a. Recommend to the (Arch)bishop the appointment or discharge of the independent auditors.

b. Recommend all audit, review and attest services, all agreed-upon procedures, and all other services to be performed for all (Arch)diocesan entities by the independent auditors.

c. Review and confirm the independence of the independent auditors by:

   i. Reviewing the non-audit services performed by the auditors, and
   ii. Reviewing the auditors’ lead and concurring audit partners’ rotation schedules.
   iii. Recommend approval of the independent auditors’ fees.

**Other Matters**

a. Meet with the independent auditors and (Arch)diocesan officials in separate executive sessions to discuss any matters that the Audit Committee/Finance Council believes should be discussed privately.

b. Ensure that significant findings by the independent auditors are received and addressed on a timely basis.

c. If necessary, recommend to the (Arch)bishop that he institute special investigations and, if appropriate, hire special counsel or experts.

d. Advise the (Arch)diocese concerning the possible hiring a member of the audit engagement team for a financial reporting oversight position in the (Arch)diocese.

e. Annually review and update this document, as needed.
II. Cemeteries

Many (Arch)dioceses operate cemeteries. These may be separate not-for-profit corporations, or they may be divisions operating within the central administrative offices. The accounting for these operations is the same regardless of the entity structure.

Generally accepted accounting principles for (Arch)diocesan cemeteries are generally included in the Codification as it relates to various assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses. Accounting policies and disclosures in the following areas may be unique to cemeteries:

- Provision of perpetual care and maintenance
  - Liability for future care costs
  - Net asset classification
- Revenue recognition policies for deferred service contracts
- Rights of return
- Recognizing the costs of developed space as those spaces are sold
- Installment sales contracts

In addition, state and local laws and regulations do vary significantly and these variations can have a significant impact on the items discussed below. (Arch)dioceses should have discussions with their auditors and legal counsel.

Provision of Perpetual Care and Maintenance

Typically, cemeteries maintain the property and facilities associated with the operations of the cemeteries in perpetuity. The annual operating costs can be substantial and when projected into perpetuity, in most instances, can be material to not only the cemeteries but also to the (Arch)diocese that oversees their operations.

From a canonical perspective there is no explicit obligation on the part of the operators of the cemeteries to ensure perpetual maintenance. However, given the fact that cemeteries are sacred grounds for the burial of the dead, they should be cared for with dignity, thus implying a moral obligation to maintain cemeteries. As a result, contractual terms vary greatly from one (Arch)diocese to another but generally call for some commitment by the cemeteries to maintain properties as cemeteries. In addition, state and local laws vary. In some cases, state law may require that operating cemeteries are required to deposit a portion of new sales proceeds into a state-run or state-supervised fund set up to provide for perpetual care. Other regulations require the establishment of segregated or set-aside net assets in separate bank accounts but maintained on the statement of financial position of the cemeteries. Finally, some state statutes specifically exclude religious cemeteries from these requirements all together. A brief legal description of maintenance funds can be found here:

http://cemeteries.uslegal.com/cemetery-maintenance/maintenance-funds/

The accounting treatment for the perpetual care and maintenance of cemeteries is dependent on the applicability of a number of the above factors. A careful and detailed review of the contractual terms and the state and local laws in each jurisdiction should be undertaken with the assistance of the operator's attorneys and accountants in arriving at the appropriate accounting treatment. Most contracts would be
governed by state law and the contractual terms should be reviewed periodically to ensure a continued appropriate understanding and accounting of the contractual terms. In some instances, a conclusion may be reached that supports the recording of an actuarially calculated liability projection to properly reflect a specific obligation to provide perpetual care and maintenance. In other instances, the review may lead to the conclusion that amounts set aside should be recorded as unrestricted assets held for limited use.

An essential step is determining whether the existing factors (contractual terms, state and local laws and regulations, published intent, etc.) support recording a liability. A conclusion that a liability exists would result in future maintenance costs (discounted at an appropriate discount rate) being recorded as sales occur.

Readers may want to review the discussion paper prepared in 2013 by the Accounting Practices Committee: Grant Thornton’s Whitepaper: Managing cemetery perpetual care obligations within your diocese at http://www.grantthornton.com/issues/library/whitepapers/nfp/2013/09-managing-cemetery-perpetual-care.aspx

Net Asset Classifications

The net assets of cemeteries are typically classified in the financial statements as unrestricted, as the revenues generally originate from exchange transactions. As discussed above, some cemeteries designate a portion of unrestricted net assets for permanent maintenance and future development. Some cemeteries operate in accordance with state laws that require a set-aside of sales contracts for permanent maintenance funds and for future development funds. Such laws may require that the principal shall remain inviolate. The net assets could therefore fall into any one of the following categories:

- Unrestricted—operating (includes net assets invested in land, building, and equipment)
- Unrestricted—designated for future development or for future maintenance
- Unrestricted—assets held for limited use
- Temporarily restricted—donor-imposed
- Permanently restricted—donor-imposed restrictions (such as trust funds)

**Undesignated unrestricted net assets.** These represent general operations of the cemeteries.

**Unrestricted designated for future development or future maintenance.** Some cemeteries internally designate a portion of the unrestricted net assets for future development or future maintenance. These designations should be formally made by the appropriate governing persons or groups. These designated net assets are to be held by the cemeteries and are to be used solely for development and maintenance of cemetery grounds. Such designations may be re-designated by the cemeteries because they do not represent funds restricted by a donor. Other designations may be contractually stipulated.

**Unrestricted assets held for limited use.** States may have a requirement that a portion of the sales for lots, crypts, and niches be set aside for permanent maintenance funds. In some cases, the principal is to remain inviolate. If after review of state and local laws and the contractual terms the organization concludes that amounts set aside should be recorded as net assets, these should be recorded as unrestricted assets held for limited use.

**Temporarily restricted.** In the event a contribution, independent of a burial contract, is made to the cemetery that is restricted by time or purpose, the unexpended portion is presented as temporarily restricted. Expenses may be incurred for purposes for which both unrestricted and temporarily restricted net assets are available. If such an expense is incurred, the temporarily restricted net assets are used first unless the expense is for a purpose that is directly attributable to another specific external source of revenue.
**Permanently restricted.** If a contribution is made to the cemetery which stipulates that the principal cannot be used and only the earnings thereon are to provide special care or adornments (i.e., flags, wreaths, etc.) or perpetual maintenance for all or any portion of the entire cemetery grounds, then these funds are permanently restricted. The earnings on the funds used to provide this required special care or adornments are treated as current revenue. Any unused earnings would be treated as temporarily restricted until the required special care or adornments are provided.

**Revenue Recognition for Deferred Service Contracts**

Typically revenue is recognized upon the execution of a contract at the time a contract is signed. Some sales contracts provide for the option to prepay burial or other service fees. Such prepayments are reflected as deferred revenues and are recognized as revenue when the burial or other service is performed.

**Rights of Return**

Some cemeteries have sales contracts that provide for the right of return for a definite period. A provision for cancellation of those sales contracts written in prior years is recorded in the financial statements based upon historical experience.

**Amortization of Developed Space**

Inventory of developed space should be recorded at historical cost. The cost of each space is based on an allocation of total expenses incurred in developing the burial space. The costs of the space is computed on a basis of the cost of each space sold and is recorded as cost of sales at the time of sale.

**Installment Sales Contracts**

Some cemeteries allow customers to purchase contracts on the installment method. A provision for interest in accordance with Codification 835 needs to be considered if the interest rate is below market.

If preneed contracts are sold, there could be state requirements to segregate some or all of the funds collected in a trust. The accounting and reporting can be significant based on contractual and cancellation terms.
Tax Matters – Columbariums

Offering columbarium niches and cenotaphs for greater than fair market value falls within the guidelines for qualifying as a charitable contribution with a partial consideration component under § 170 of the Internal Revenue Code.¹

Sales of the rights to use the columbarium’s niches and cenotaphs will be substantially related (aside from the production of income) to the parish’s exempt religious and charitable purposes under §501(c)(3) and, thus, will not be an unrelated trade or business under §513(a), and will not result in unrelated business income under § 511.²

1 A contribution or gift, for the purposes of § 170 is a voluntary transfer of money or property made by the transferor without receipt or expectation of a financial benefit commensurate with the money or property transferred.

Section 511 imposes a tax on the “unrelated business taxable income” of organizations otherwise exempt from federal income tax under § 510(c)(3).
III. Compensation of Priests and the Dual Tax Status of Priests

The IRS expects that ministers, including priests, are ordinarily classified as employees for income tax purposes but self-employed for Social security and Medicare tax purposes (Minister Audit Technique Guide, April 2009). No denomination has been successful in defending the self-employment status position for clergy, although certain individual clergy have successfully maintained self-employment status.

From the middle to late 1990s, when the IRS audited priests who filed their tax returns as self-employed for income tax purposes, it typically reclassified them from self-employed status to employee status.

In determining the employee or independent contractor status of taxpayers, the IRS now uses the three-category approach (behavioral control, financial control and the relationship of the parties) to determine the amount of control exercised over the priest's duties. (See Chapter VI: “Compensation of Lay Employees and Deacons of the Church” for a more detailed discussion of the three categories and IRS Publication 15-A; Employer’s Supplemental Tax Guide.) An IRS analysis of the three categories as they pertain to priests would most likely result in a determination that the priest is an employee, as did the twenty-factor analysis under Rev. Rul. 87-41.

Priests who file their tax returns based on Form W-2 file as employees. This means that they report their unreimbursed business expenses on Form 2106, Unreimbursed Employee Business Expenses, (or the simpler Form 2106-EZ) and then transfer those expenses to Schedule A, Itemized Deductions. Common expenses include meals, entertainment, transportation and travel. It should be noted that the deductible portion of both meals and entertainment is 50% of the total. Generally speaking for priests, the standard deduction is greater than allowable itemized deductions, in which case there would be no tax benefit to filing either Form 2106 or Schedule A. The standard deduction amount is adjusted for inflation each year and implicitly encompasses tax deductions not common to priests (e.g., real estate taxes and mortgage interest).

If the (Arch)diocese adopts an accountable business expense reimbursement plan, the reimbursements paid to the priest are not taxable. To be an accountable plan, the expenses must be related to the priest’s responsibilities, the priest must adequately account for the expenses and all excess reimbursements must be returned (IRS Publication 463). If the (Arch)diocese adopts a non-accountable reimbursement plan, the reimbursement is added to wages as taxable income reported on Form W-2 and the priest may claim the expenses on Form 2106 as explained above.

In very limited cases, a few priests may be permitted to file their tax returns based on Form 1099-MISC filed as bona fide independent contractors. This means that they report all income and related expenses on Schedule C. Under this tax status, priests receive full, dollar-for-dollar deduction offset against their income for ministry-related expenses.

Other Clergy Tax Considerations

Tax-free Housing

Housing provided to priests may qualify as an income tax-free benefit. However, it is subject to self-employment tax and, as such, is to be reported on Form 1040, Schedule SE. Determining the value of
housing provided can vary depending on the location of the housing, whether or not it is in a parish rectory, the level of privacy, etc. The IRS suggests that the value of the housing be determined by reference to comparable data. For a discussion of housing allowances for both active and retired priests, please see Chapter IV: "Compensation of (Arch)diocesan Priests: Pension and Other Post-Retirement Benefits."

**Tax-free Board**

Meals provided to priests are an income tax-free benefit, under the following conditions:

1. The meals are consumed on the parish premises.
2. The meals are provided for convenience of the parish, i.e., the priest is “on call.”

Meals that do not meet both of the above requirements do not qualify as a tax-free benefit. If the priest is provided with a food allowance or reimbursement for food purchases or restaurant meals, it may represent taxable income to the priest unless it qualifies as a business (Church) expense under an accountable reimbursement plan.

The value of meals provided to priests are subject to self-employment tax and, as such are to be included on Form 1040, Schedule SE.

**Stipends, Mass Fees, Allowances**

The IRS considers Mass Stipends, Fees, Stole Fees and Honoraria as payments for services rendered and, thus, represent earnings subject to both federal income tax and Social Security/Self-Employment tax. When such payments are issued by the employer, they should be included on the priest’s Form W-2.

Allowances paid to a priest (auto, clothing, etc.) represent earnings subject to federal income tax and Social Security/Self-Employment tax. Any amounts paid to—cover a priest’s self-employment or income taxes are taxable income for both taxes. Allowances paid to a priest are to be included on the priest’s Form W-2.

**Income Tax Withholding**

Priests are exempt from all federal payroll withholding requirements. However, a priest may elect to have federal income tax withheld from his pay. He may elect to have sufficient amounts withheld only as federal income tax to cover both federal income taxes and Social Security/Self-Employment tax. As discussed above, the priest is considered self-employed for Social Security purposes; therefore, Social Security (FICA) and Medicare taxes should never be withheld from his pay. State and local withholding requirements for priests may vary by state and locality.

**Clergy Exemption for 403(b) or 401(k) Contributions** Contributions by priests to a Church sponsored 403(b) or 401(k) plan are excluded from net earnings for self-employment purposes. Therefore, when priests calculate their income subject to self-employment tax, they should exclude the amounts contributed to their 403(b) or 401(k) plan via payroll deduction.
IV. Compensation of (Arch)diocesan Priests: Pension and Other Post-Retirement Benefits

Introduction

Canon law stipulates that the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop must provide suitable support and housing for all (Arch)diocesan clergy upon their retirement from active service. In the United States, the USCCB has promulgated a set of norms in light of this provision of canon law. In adhering to these norms, (Arch)dioceses have developed various approaches to providing for the well-being of its retired priests. Many (Arch)dioceses have adopted defined benefit plans to provide pension benefits for retired priests. In some cases, (Arch)dioceses sponsor tax-sheltered annuity plans or other forms of defined contribution plans.

Most retired clergy are eligible for Medicare benefits. Currently, Parts A (hospital inpatient and limited long term care), B (physician and outpatient) and D (pharmacy) programs are available. Persons need to pay close attention to enrollment requirements for these benefits, especially Part D, as timing affects the participant’s cost. (Arch)dioceses may provide other post-retirement benefits, such as supplemental medical and dental benefits, long-term care, and housing allowances. Although there are numerous types of benefit programs, all (Arch)dioceses are obligated to provide financial support for retired priests in accord with the gospel spirit. As medical programs evolve and as federal healthcare requirements change, it is important to adjust payments accordingly.


These pronouncements apply to all entities issuing financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), including the Catholic Church. (These pronouncements apply to lay employee plans as well as (Arch)diocesan clergy plans.) Accounting guidance is periodically revised; (Arch)diocesan staff should consult with professionals as changes are effective.

Accounting Treatment

While it is recommended that retired priests’ benefits be formalized in a written plan document, it is not required by canon law. When developing or changing a plan document, legal counsel should be consulted. In the case of benefits provided without a written plan document, it is important to distinguish between benefits that are provided on a consistent basis over time and those benefits that are occasional and discretionary. As canon law requires that (Arch)dioceses provide support for their retired clergy, all (Arch)dioceses will have some (if not all) benefits that are provided on a consistent basis. Even when benefits are not formalized in a plan document, but are provided on a consistent basis, it is necessary to expense the projected benefit obligation over the period of time that services are provided by the priest. A corresponding liability is recorded, which is satisfied as retirement benefits are paid or funded. Benefits that are provided on a case-by-case basis, without any consistency or expectation thereof, represent discretionary payments and may be accounted for on a pay-as-you go (expensed when incurred) basis.

The regular, systematic practice of providing certain benefits to retired priests (such as monthly pension payments, payment of premiums for Medicare supplemental insurance policies, payment of medical and
dental bills, housing subsidies, etc.) is evidence of a defined benefit pension plan or a post-retirement benefit plan, whether or not a written plan document exists. The benefits may be in the form of either a reimbursement to the retiree or direct payment to a provider. Under these circumstances, benefits are viewed as deferred compensation arrangements whereby the (Arch)diocese agrees to pay future benefits in exchange for current services. Therefore, the expected cost of providing pension and other post-retirement benefits to priests is to be recognized over their years of active service in the (Arch)diocese. The obligation of the (Arch)diocese for pension and other post-retirement benefits is to be accrued in accordance with sound actuarial principles and the terms of the plan.

ASC 715 applies to all not-for-profit organizations with single-employer, multiple-employer and multi-employer defined benefit pension, health or other postretirement plans. Organizations with single-employer and multiple-employer plans are required to: (1) report the funded status of its plans, measured as the difference between the fair value of the plan assets and the benefit obligation, directly on its balance sheet (recognition provisions), (2) align the measurement date for plan assets and benefit obligations with the organization’s fiscal year-end (measurement date provisions) and (3) provide certain disclosures in the organization’s financial statements. Organizations with multi-employer plans are not required to report the funded status of the plans on their balance sheet; however, there are required disclosures to be made in the organization’s financial statements.

ASC 715, Compensation – Retirement Benefits is a complex topic, and the circumstances of each plan need to be considered in its full implementation. Since these circumstances can vary widely from plan to plan, it would be prudent for (Arch)dioceses to seek professional advice with respect to their own particular situations.

Employers are required to provide significant disclosures about the assets in postretirement benefits plans (e.g. fair value of plan assets, concentrations and categories of plan assets, etc.), (ASC 715-20-50-3; 958-715-501). The content and presentation of these disclosures changes periodically and current guidance should be reviewed when financial statements and footnotes are prepared.

An analysis of payments made to, or on behalf of, retired priests should be conducted to determine whether—despite the absence of a written plan—there is a pattern of payments that represent a systematic practice of providing benefits that should be accounted for in accordance with relevant accounting pronouncements. Additionally, consideration should be given to formalizing existing practice in a written plan document. This provides clarity to the priests and eliminates misunderstandings as to exactly what benefits they can expect. The tax treatment for benefits should be well documented and followed consistently.

**Plan Funding**

The method of funding these benefit plans is varied and often complex. Many (Arch)dioceses rely on special assessments, special collections, fund-raising campaigns, or a combination of these and other methods. Some (Arch)dioceses cover pension and other post-retirement benefits on a pay-as-you go basis, while others pre-fund these obligations. Pre-funding can take several forms. Some (Arch)dioceses set funds aside in a separate account or simply designate a portion of their unrestricted net assets. Some (Arch)dioceses establish a separate trust arrangement, thereby transferring the assets off the balance sheet and legally restricting the use of the assets.

Consideration should be given to pre-funding pension and post-retirement benefit plans. Insufficient liquid
assets may result in the (Arch)diocese's inability to meet its obligation to retired priests. If funds are not segregated for these purposes, usually in a trust, the assets may be subject to creditor claims. Trusts should not be over funded; a funding policy should be developed, approved by competent authority and followed consistently.

Only assets that are segregated and legally restricted for pension and post-retirement benefits qualify as plan assets under the provisions of GAAP. Assets that are not segregated in a trust or otherwise effectively restricted so that they cannot be used by the (Arch)diocese for other purposes do not qualify as plan assets.

Health care costs are continuing to increase each year. Medical costs as a percentage of GNP are also expected to continue to increase and life expectancies are continuing to increase. The issue of recognizing and funding these future obligations is more critical today than ever. When pension and post-retirement plans are pre-funded, assets should be appropriately invested to generate a return on investment while maintaining the corpus of the fund and providing sufficient liquidity to reduce the amount of future funding needed.

**Status of Priests' Retirement Plans**

Consultation with (Arch)diocesan legal counsel or pension counsel is necessary to determine whether a (Arch)diocesan retirement plan (for lay employees or priests) meets the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code (IRC) either as a qualified defined benefit or defined contribution plan or as a section 403(b) tax-deferred annuity, and whether the plan qualifies as a "church plan" under section 414(e) of the Code. Although qualified church plans are not subject to ERISA (Employee Retirement Income Security Act) vesting, participation, and funding rules and are not required to file the annual Form 5500, such plans must nonetheless comply with numerous technical requirements, including certain pre-ERISA standards. Because pension legislation is amended frequently, periodic compliance reviews of all (Arch)diocesan retirement plans are advisable.

**Housing Allowance Designation**

IRC section 107 provides an exclusion from gross income for a parsonage (housing) allowance provided to clergy (active as well as retired). This includes the rental value of a home furnished to him as part of compensation or a housing allowance, to the extent that the payment is used to rent or provide a home. In order to qualify under IRC section 107, the trustees of the priests' retirement plan, or the (Arch)bishop, must designate a portion of each payment as a housing allowance excludable under IRC section 107 prior to the beginning of each year.

The amount excludable from gross income as a housing allowance is limited to the least of the following three options:

- The amount actually used to provide a home (including rent, furnishings, repairs, insurance, taxes, utilities—but not food or entertainment)
- The amount officially designated as a housing allowance
- The fair rental value of the home, including furnishings, utilities, garage, etc.

The sum of all pension payments issued in a calendar year are to be reported as the gross distribution amount on form 1099-R. If the (Arch)diocese has properly designated all, or a portion of the pension payments as a housing allowance, the taxable portion of the total payments cannot be determined by the (Arch)diocese, since the amount excludable from income as a housing allowance has to be determined by the taxpayer.
based on the three options shown above. Therefore, the taxable amount on form 1099-R should be left blank and the box —taxable amount not determined checked.

The exclusion from income for federal income tax purposes applies to both active and retired clergy. The exclusion from income for Self-Employment tax purposes applies only to retired clergy.

**Guidelines for the Retirement of Bishops**

1. Beginning January 1, 2011, the stipend recommended for all (Arch)biskeys in retirement will be a minimum of $1,900.00 per month, to be adjusted annually according to the local cost of living index. If pension benefits granted to a Bishop Emeritus already provide the minimum amount recommended for the stipend, no additional funds need be given. If, on the other hand, pension benefits do not meet the minimum recommended amount, additional funds should be supplied to reach the recommended minimum level. If pension benefits granted to retired priests of the (Arch)diocese exceed the minimum recommended for the Bishop Emeritus, the greater amount should be considered appropriate for the Bishop Emeritus.

2. In addition to the monthly stipend, it is also recommended that in fraternal charity and solicitude each (Arch)diocese also provide the following:

   a. Appropriate housing and board – If he so desires, and unless the Holy See has provided otherwise, appropriate housing and board within the (Arch)diocese where the Bishop Emeritus last served, including the use of a private chapel and housekeeping assistance. It is recommended by the Congregation for Bishops that the official residence provided by the (Arch)diocese be reserved for the presiding (Arch)diocesan Bishop. The (Arch)diocese is obligated to provide a Bishop Emeritus with appropriate housing and board even should he choose to reside outside of the (Arch)diocese.

   b. Health and welfare benefits, including major medical and the full cost of medical and hospital care. This includes any applicable coverage for home health care, assisted living facilities or long-term care facilities.

   c. An office with secretarial assistance commensurate with need.

   d. Suitable funeral and burial.

It is recommended that each (Arch)diocese also provide the following Benefits:

   a. Transportation including an insured automobile for his use.

   b. Travel expenses (i.e., transportation, lodging, food, etc.) to allow the Bishop Emeritus to attend:

   c. Provincial meetings and workshops

   d. Regional meetings, workshops and retreats

   e. Meetings of the USCCB

   f. Ad limina visits to the Holy See

   g. Ecumenical councils, Synods of Bishops, and meetings of the Roman Curia to which the Bishop Emeritus is associated.

   h. Episcopal installations.

3. The sustenance of a Bishop Emeritus who is a member of an institute of consecrated life or a society of apostolic life is to be provided by the (Arch)diocese in which he last served, unless the institute or society wishes to provide such support.
4. If it seems advisable in order to seek some degree of uniformity, the (Arch)dioceses of a given region or province, in a spirit of subsidiarity, should take upon themselves the responsibility to interpret and implement these guidelines, taking into account the local economy. Only in this way can the differing living costs in the various regions of the country be factored into the consideration of retirement benefits.
V. Compensation of Religious Members of religious orders who provide services to a (Arch)diocesan employer (defined here to include the (Arch)diocese and any affiliated entities listed in The Official Catholic Directory [OCD], i.e., the Kenedy Directory) are subject to distinct tax and reporting rules, primarily as a result of their vow of poverty.

Employment Classification

Status as a member of a religious order does not automatically determine employment classification. Rather, classification of a religious as an employee of a (Arch)diocesan employer or as an independent contractor should be made by applying the common law tests as interpreted by the Internal Revenue Service (IRS). (See Chapter VI "Compensation of Lay Employees and Deacons of the Church.")

Taxation of Compensation

No individual religious is "tax-exempt." Tax exemption applies, if at all, to a religious order that qualifies as tax exempt under section 501(c) (3) of the Internal Revenue Code. Further, status as a member of a religious order does not automatically immunize from federal income and employment taxation the compensation paid to a religious who is performing services for a (Arch)diocesan employer. Rather, the taxability of such compensation (including employee fringe benefits, if any) provided by the (Arch)diocesan employer, is determined in accordance with the principles set forth in Revenue Ruling (Rev. Rul.) 77-290, 1977-2 C.B. 26.

Rev. Rul. 77-290

Under Rev. Rul. 77-290, a member of a religious order providing services to a (Arch)diocesan employer will be considered for tax purposes to be an agent of his or her order and will not be liable individually for federal income or employment taxes on compensation paid by the (Arch)diocesan employer, provided three criteria are met: (1) the religious must be subject to a vow of poverty; (2) the religious must be providing services for a (Arch)diocesan employer listed in the OCD at the direction of his or her ecclesiastical superiors; and (3) the religious must remit the full amount of compensation to his or her religious order, which must be exempt from federal income tax under section 501(c)(3) of the Code. If any Rev. Rul. 77-290 criterion fails to be met, the religious is taxable individually on compensation received.

Rev. Rul. 77-290 does not purport to determine the employment status of a religious providing service for a (Arch)diocesan employer, and does not preclude classification of a religious as an employee of a (Arch)diocesan employer or the provision of customary employee benefits to religious who are employees.

Verifying Rev. Rul. 77-290 Requirements

It is incumbent on the (Arch)diocesan employer to determine whether a member of a religious order meets all three criteria of Rev. Rul. 77-290 before suspending its general withholding and reporting obligations under the Internal Revenue Code. The (Arch)diocesan employer should verify that the individual is a member of a section 501(c)(3) religious order subject to a vow of poverty recognized by the Church and that the individual's services have been authorized by his or her religious superior. These first two issues can be resolved in any reasonable manner, e.g., by correspondence with the member's religious superior.
Section 501(c)(3) status should be verified by reference to the current OCD. The (Arch)diocesan employer should also verify that the full amount of compensation paid to the religious will be remitted to the religious order. This can be accomplished in one of several ways, listed below in order of preference: (1) by direct deposit to a bank account bearing the name and employer identification number ("EIN") of the religious order; (2) by check payable to the religious order; or (3) by check payable jointly to the religious order and the individual religious.

As a general rule, compensation paid directly to an individual religious will be treated as taxable to the individual religious. However, in limited circumstances, (Arch)diocesan employers may be justified in treating such compensation as qualifying under Rev. Rul. 77-290. In these circumstances, the (Arch)diocesan employer should determine that there exists a significant impediment to the payment of compensation to the religious order directly as outlined above. In addition, the (Arch)diocesan employer should obtain appropriate written documentation from the superior of the religious order certifying that compensation paid directly to the individual religious will be remitted to the religious order in accordance with the requirements of Rev. Rul. 77-290. This supporting documentation should be updated annually.

NOTE: As religious increasingly come to the United States from congregations outside the country, special care must be taken to review and conform payment for services to the criteria identified above. If the religious congregation is not exempt from taxes by inclusion in the OCD, any payment must usually be made under an ordinary and taxable employment relationship.

Reporting Compensation

The manner of reporting compensation of religious performing services for (Arch)diocesan employers depends on the taxability of that compensation. If the criteria of Rev. Rul. 77-290 are satisfied and compensation is not taxable to the individual religious, no reporting on Form W-2 or Form 1099 is required.

If the criteria of Rev. Rul. 77-290 have not been satisfied, e.g., if the (Arch)diocesan employer has been unable to verify that the full amount of compensation will be remitted to the religious order, the compensation is taxable to the individual religious and should be reported in the ordinary course of employment. Thus, if the religious is taxable and is classified as an employee (see above) of the (Arch)diocesan employer, compensation must be reported on Form W-2. If the religious is taxable and is classified as an independent contractor of the (Arch)diocesan employer, compensation must be reported on Form 1099. No withholding is required with respect to independent contractors.

Notes

1 As used herein, “religious order” means canonical religious institutes or societies of apostolic life that also meet the requirements of Rev. Proc. 91-20, 1991-1 C.B. 524.
2 For purposes of Rev. Rul. 77-290, "employment taxes" refers to FICA and Medicare taxes.
3 This also includes asterisked (domestic non-Group Ruling) listings in the OCD, since these are subject to the same standards of relationship to the Church as are ordinary Group Ruling listings in the OCD.
4 In fact, Rev. Rul. 77-290 presumes that the religious are employees of the entities described therein, since neither FICA nor income tax withholding would be at issue in the absence of status as an employee.
5 Any questions that arise concerning the nature or validity of the vow of poverty taken by a particular
individual can be referred to a canon lawyer specializing in the field of religious life.

For example, mere insistence that compensation be paid directly to the individual religious does not meet this standard. In practice, such situations will be rare.

Some (Arch)diocesan employers may currently report compensation paid to nontaxable religious, generally in one of two ways: (1) issuance of a Form 1099 bearing the religious order or civil corporation’s employer identification number (EIN); or (2) issuance of a Form W-2 bearing the Social Security number (SSN) of the religious employee. The first practice is problematic for the religious order and should not occur. The second practice is also problematic and may trigger IRS scrutiny.

Although commercial payroll services may initially require issuance of a Form W-2 or Form 1099, with persistence and determination they can be persuaded to modify their computer programs to accommodate the special needs of (Arch)diocesan employers with respect to Rev. Rul. 77-290.

Reporting and tax withholding with respect to taxable religious will differ for religious priests and non-ordained religious. The compensation of a taxable religious priest who is performing ministerial services should be reported in the same manner as that of (Arch)diocesan priest employees. Under Treas. Reg. § 1.107-1(a), ministerial services include (1) performance of sacerdotal functions; (2) conduct of religious worship; (3) administration and maintenance of religious organizations and their integral agencies; and (4) performance of teaching and administrative duties at theological seminaries.

Note that taxable priests performing ministerial services are treated as self-employed for Social Security tax purposes even if they are classified as employees for income tax purposes (see Chapter III "Compensation of Priests and the Dual Tax Status of Priests" for further discussion). They are liable for SECA tax under section 1402 of the Code. No FICA taxes should be withheld. The compensation of a taxable religious priest employee who is not performing ministerial services, or of a taxable non-ordained religious employee, should be reported in the same manner as that of (Arch)diocesan lay employees, with income and FICA tax withheld.

When Medicare is Secondary Payer (Medicare rules for religious may differ)

50.1 - Clarification of Current Employment Status for Specific Groups

A Member of Religious Order B3-3329.3.D-E, A3-3491, A3-IM 3491, HO-263, SNF-336, HH-253, A3-3492.B.3.e

A member of a religious order whose members are required to take a vow of poverty is not considered to have current employment status with the religious order if the services he/she performs as a member of the order are considered employment by the order for Social Security purposes only. This applies where the religious order elected Social Security coverage for its members under section 3121(r) of the Internal Revenue Member of Religious Order Code. Thus, Medicare is primary payer to any group health coverage provided by the religious order.

This exception applies only to members of religious orders who have taken a vow of poverty. It does not apply to clergy or to any member of a religious order who has not taken a vow of poverty or to lay employees of the order. This exception applies not only to services performed for the order itself (such as administrative, housekeeping, and religious services), but also to services performed at the direction of the order for employers outside of the order provided that the outside employer does not provide the member of the religious order with its own group health plan coverage. A member of a religious order has current employment status with the outside employer as a result of providing services on behalf of the outside employer (an ongoing business relationship exists). If the outside employer provides group health plan coverage to the member of the religious order on the basis of that current employment status relationship, the usual Medicare Secondary Payer rules apply.
Medicare is the secondary payer to the group health plan of the outside employer if the outside employer has the requisite number of employees.

**EXAMPLE 1**
Sister Mary Agnes is a member of a religious order where members are required to take a vow of poverty. Sister Mary Agnes was assigned to teach at a church school in the (Arch)diocese of the Metropolis. The (Arch)diocese does not provide group health plan coverage to Sister Mary Agnes. The only group health coverage available to Sister Mary Agnes is provided by the religious order. Medicare is the primary payer for services provided to Sister Mary Agnes.

**EXAMPLE 2**
Sister Mary Teresa is a member of a religious order whose members are required to take a vow of poverty. Sister Mary Teresa was assigned to teach at a church school in the (Arch)diocese of Smallville. On the basis of her teaching relationship with the (Arch)diocese of Smallville, the (Arch)diocese provides group health plan coverage to Sister Mary Teresa. The group health plan provided by the (Arch)diocese of Smallville is the primary payer and Medicare is the secondary payer for services provided to Sister Mary Teresa.

Carriers should note that the exemption only applies to the working aged and disability provisions that base a group health plan’s obligation to be a primary payer on a current employment status relationship. The exception does not apply to the End Stage Renal Disease (ESRD), workers compensation or liability and no-fault provisions.

**Notes**

Excerpted from the Medicare Secondary Payer (MSP) Manual which is published by the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services, a federal agency within the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
VI. Compensation of Lay Employees and Deacons of the Church

Introduction

Compensation issues related to Lay Employees and Deacons working for (Arch)diocese and/or its parishes are numerous and driven by significant federal, state, and even local regulations.

This chapter provides a general overview of the following three topics:

- Classification of Personnel as Employees or Independent Contractors
- Exempt vs. Non-Exempt employees
- Taxation of ordained deacons

Accordingly, this chapter does not address Lay Retirement Benefit Plans, other employee benefits, or numerous other matters impacting the compensation of Lay employees and Deacons.

Classification: Employee or Independent Contractor

The mission of the Church requires the efforts of the ordained, the professed and the laity. When the efforts result in paid compensation to lay people, it is important to record and report the compensation properly.

At calendar year end, two methods are prescribed by the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) to report compensation: Form W-2 for employees, and Form 1099 for independent contractors. Once a business determines the worker status of a lay worker, the reporting procedures are quite clear. The challenge lies in the determination of worker status (employee versus independent contractor).

Clearly a full-time lay worker with benefits (e.g., a maintenance worker, office assistant, or school teacher) is an employee and thus the employer withholds federal, state and local taxes; withholds and matches Social Security (FICA) and Medicare taxes; and reports compensation and withholdings on Form W-2.

Of course, when a parish hires an outside service (which could conceivably be an individual sole proprietorship) to repair the parish boiler, the parish may properly treat the service as being provided by an independent contractor and issue a check for payment of that contractor’s invoice with no withholding obligations. At the end of the calendar year the parish will issue a Form 1099 to that independent contractor for services rendered.

(Arch)diocesan personnel should be aware that payments to non-employees that are classified as “foreign persons”, including payments for goods, reimbursements, services should be supported by the proper tax form (e.g., Form 8283 for purposes of determining if an exemption from withholding taxes is warranted) and, if the individual is traveling to this country, proper immigration status should be confirmed prior to services being provided.

As a general rule, most individual workers that receive compensation (in whatever form) should be classified as employees. Additional tax, insurance and benefit-related risk may be incurred when employees are incorrectly identified as independent contractors. It is the (Arch)diocesan entity that should make the classification decision based on its review of all the facts and circumstances; it is not up to the worker as to how he/she should be classified.

Businesses should refer to IRS Publication 15-A: Employer’s Supplemental Tax Guide for official
guidance on these determinations (www.irs.gov). It is revised annually. State regulations may also affect the classification of employees.

The IRS has provided the following three-category approach to assist businesses in determining proper worker classification.

A worker’s status under the common law test is determined by applying relevant facts that fall into these three categories: behavioral control, financial control, and the type of relationship itself. In each case, it is very important to consider all the facts—no single fact provides the answer. This common law test applies for purposes of FICA, FUTA, Federal income tax withholding, and the Railroad Retirement Tax Act, if there is no controlling statute.

1. Behavioral Control. Facts reviewed under the Behavioral Control analysis show whether a business has a right to direct or control how the worker does the work. A worker is an employee when the business has the right to direct and control the worker. The business does not have to actually direct or control the way the work is done—as long as the employer has the right to direct and control the work.

For example:

- **Instructions** – if the worker receives extensive instructions on how work is to be done, this suggests that the worker may be an employee. Instructions can cover a wide range of topics, for example: how, when, or where to do the work, what tools or equipment to use, what assistants to hire to help with the work, and where to purchase supplies and services. If a worker receives less extensive instructions about what should be done, but not how it should be done, the worker may be an independent contractor. For instance, instructions about time and place may be less important than directions on how the work is performed.

- **Training** - if the worker is provided with training about required procedures and methods, this suggests that the business wants the work done in a certain way, and the worker may be an employee.

2. Financial Control. Facts reviewed under the Financial Control analysis show whether there is a right to direct or control the business part of the work.

For example:

- **Significant Investment** – if the worker has a significant investment in his/her work, the worker may be an independent contractor. While there is no precise dollar test, the investment must have substance. However, a significant investment is not necessary to be an independent contractor.

- **Expenses** – if the worker is not reimbursed for some or all business expenses, then the worker may be an independent contractor, especially if the worker’s un-reimbursed business expenses are high.

- **Opportunity for Profit or Loss** – if the worker can realize a profit or incur a loss, this suggests that the worker is in business for himself and that the worker may be an independent contractor.

3. Relationship of the Parties. These are facts that illustrate how the business and the worker perceive their relationship. For example:

- **Employee Benefits** – if the worker receives benefits this is an indication that the worker is an employee. If the worker does not receive benefits, the worker could be either an employee or an independent contractor.
• **Written Contracts** – a written contract may show what both the worker and the business intend. This may be very significant if it is difficult, if not impossible, to determine status based on other facts. At the same time, a written contract in and of itself should not be the determining factor.

• **Permanency of the Relationship** – The expectation of a relationship to continue indefinitely, rather than for a specific project or time period, is generally considered as intent to create an employer-employee relationship.

• **Services Provided as Key Activity of the Business** – An employee, and not an independent contractor, performs services that are a key aspect of the regular business of the organization.

In uncertain cases, employers have the option of filing Form SS-8: a form designed by the IRS that asks questions about the three factors outlined above. The IRS is usually not quick in responding to a Form SS-8 inquiry. Further, if the employment status is so uncertain, it is likely that the IRS will rule in favor of employee status.

**Exempt vs. Non-Exempt Employees**

This topic refers to whether an employee is exempt from the overtime rules, or is subject to overtime rules (non-exempt). This determination of employee status can be subjective, although there are guidelines from the Department of Labor (DOL).

The overtime rules for non-exempt employees require that those employees be paid for overtime. However the rules for determining overtime hours and the rates for those hours are complex. Furthermore, in March 13, 2014 President Obama issued a memorandum directing the Secretary of Labor to review the existing Fair Labor Standards Act regulations. The memorandum instructs the Secretary to update regulations regarding who qualifies for overtime protection under the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA or Act). Any revisions that the Department of Labor (DOL) proposes will apply only to non-Federal employees, i.e., those in private sector organizations. As of this writing, those updates are yet to issue.

Currently, the FLSA requires that most employees in the United States be paid at least the federal minimum wage for all hours worked and overtime pay at time and one-half the regular rate of pay for all hours worked over 40 hours in a workweek.

However, the FLSA provides an exemption from both minimum wage and overtime pay for employees employed as bona fide executive, administrative, professional outside sales employees and certain computer employees. To qualify for exemption, employees generally must meet certain tests regarding their job duties and be paid on a salary basis at not less than $455 per week. Job titles do not determine exempt status. In order for an exemption to apply, an employee’s specific job duties and salary must meet all the requirements of the DOL’s regulations.

The following are some categories of exemptions. Please review the DOL summary sheets available on its website for further discussion of the following. As well, be aware that the regulations can be complex and should be reviewed carefully, and that new case law is constantly refining how the following categories should be evaluated.

**Executive Exemption**

To qualify for the executive employee exemption, all of the following tests must be met:

• The employee must be compensated on a **salary** basis (as defined in the regulations at a
rate not less than $455 per week;

- The employee’s primary duty must be managing the enterprise, or managing a customarily recognized department or subdivision of the enterprise;

- The employee must customarily and regularly direct the work of at least two or more other full-time employees or their equivalent; and

- The employee must have the authority to hire or fire other employees, or the employee’s suggestions and recommendations as to the hiring, firing, advancement, promotion or any other change of status of other employees must be given particular weight.

**Administrative Exemptions**

To qualify for the administrative employee exemption, all of the following tests must be met:

- The employee must be compensated on a salary or fee basis (as defined in the regulations) at a rate not less than $455 per week;

- The employee’s primary duty must be the performance of office or non-manual work directly related to the management or general business operations of the employer or the employer’s customers; and

- The employee’s primary duty includes the exercise of discretion and independent judgment with respect to matters of significance.

**Professional Exemption (learned and creative)**

To qualify for the learned professional employee exemption, all of the following tests must be met:

- The employee must be compensated on a salary or fee basis (as defined in the regulations) at a rate not less than $455 per week;

- The employee’s primary duty must be the performance of work requiring advanced knowledge, defined as work which is predominantly intellectual in character and which includes work requiring the consistent exercise of discretion and judgment.

- The advanced knowledge must be in a field of science or learning; and

- The advanced knowledge must be customarily acquired by a prolonged course of specialized intellectual instruction.

To qualify for the creative professional employee exemption, all of the following tests must be met:

- The employee must be compensated on a salary or fee basis (as defined in the regulations) at a rate not less than $455 per week; and,

- The employee’s primary duty must be the performance of work requiring invention, imagination, originality or talent in a recognized field of artistic or creative endeavor.

**Computer Employee Exemption**

To qualify for the computer employee exemption, the following tests must be met:

- The employee must be compensated either on a salary or fee basis (as defined in the regulations) at a rate not less than $455 per week or, if compensated on an hourly basis, at a rate not less than $27.63 an hour;

- The employee must be employed as a computer systems analyst, computer programmer, software engineer or other similarly skilled worker in the computer field performing the
The employee’s primary duty must consist of:

1. The application of systems analysis techniques and procedures, including consulting with users, to determine hardware, software or system functional specifications;
2. The design, development, documentation, analysis, creation, testing or modification of computer systems or programs, including prototypes, based on and related to user or system design specifications;
3. The design, documentation, testing, creation or modification of computer programs related to machine operating systems; or
4. A combination of the aforementioned duties, the performance of which requires the same level of skills.

Highly Compensated Employees

Highly compensated employees performing office or non-manual work and paid total annual compensation in 2015 of $120,000 or more are exempt from the FLSA if they customarily and regularly perform at least one of the duties of an exempt executive, administrative or professional employee identified in the standard tests for exemption. This is a complex exemption that requires a thorough understanding of what constitutes compensation. Reference should also be made to Chapter XIV-Income taxes, for additional discussion regarding “Excess Benefit Transactions” and the rebuttable presumption standards for lay employees.

Outside Sales Exemption

The Outside Sales Exemption would not generally apply to parishes and schools. However, it could apply in entities such as radio and TV stations, cemeteries, etc., where outside sales personnel may be employed. If this is the case, to qualify for the outside sales employee exemption, the following must be met:

- The employee’s primary duty must be making sales (as defined in the FLSA), or obtaining orders or contracts for services or for the use of facilities for which a consideration will be paid by the client or customer; and,
- The employee must be customarily and regularly engaged away from the employer’s place or places of business.

Taxation of Ordained Deacons

Permanent Deacons

Depending upon the facts and circumstances of their Church employment, permanent deacons will be classified either as lay employees or “ministers of the gospel” for tax purposes. This is not an option to be made at the discretion of the deacon or the Church employer. In order to be classified as a minister of the gospel under the Internal Revenue Code, the deacon must be “ordained, commissioned, or licensed” as a minister and must be performing the duties that are normally those of a minister of the gospel. All ordained permanent deacons meet the first requirement. However, all permanent deacons do not necessarily meet the second requirement. The specific job performed by a particular deacon must be analyzed to determine whether that job involves the performance of duties that are normally those of a minister of the gospel. Under IRS regulations, these will include “the ministration of sacerdotal functions and the conduct of religious worship, and the control, conduct, and maintenance of religious organizations (including the religious boards, societies, and other integral agencies of such organizations), under the authority of a religious body constituting a church or church denomination.” Whether a particular activity constitutes a
“sacerdotal function” depends on the tenets or practices of the particular church or denomination. Under canon law, deacons do not perform the same sacerdotal functions as priests, but may nonetheless perform services normally those of a minister of the gospel within the meaning of the IRS regulations. It is recommended that decisions about the proper classifications of deacons for tax purposes be made centrally by the (Arch)diocese in order to ensure consistency of interpretation among deacons in similar job categories.

If a deacon qualifies as a minister of the gospel for tax purposes, he must be treated consistently as such for all tax purposes. Thus, such a deacon is eligible for the section 107 housing allowance exclusion (assuming all other applicable requirements are met), and must also be treated as self-employed for social security purposes, being liable for SECA taxes. If a deacon does not qualify as a minister of the gospel for tax purposes (i.e. he is not performing duties that are normally those of a minister of the gospel), he must be treated in the same manner as lay employees for tax purposes.

**Transitional Deacons**

When a seminarian is ordained to the deaconate, he should be treated in the same manner as an ordained permanent deacon for tax purposes. Thus, if he is assigned to a parish during the summer or for a year-long training assignment and is performing duties that are normally those of a minister of the gospel, he would be eligible for the Section 107 housing allowance exclusion, and would be treated as self-employed for social security purposes and be liable for SECA taxes. If he is not performing duties that are normally those of a minister of the gospel, he would be treated in the same manner as lay employees for tax purposes.

**Religious Orders**

Some permanent and transitional deacons may also be members of religious orders. In this case, the norms in Chapter V, *Compensation of Religious*, are applicable. The norms given above apply only to (Arch)diocesan permanent and transitional deacons.
VII. (Arch)diocesan Payments Associated with Priestly Formation

Introduction

The education and financial support of seminarians are provided by (Arch)dioceses through various means. Education is typically provided through enrollment in a seminary, and financial support may be provided for room and board, travel, medical, and other living expenses. Additionally, the seminarian may be enrolled in the (Arch)diocesan group health insurance program. There are four general financial arrangements:

1. Costs incurred are the responsibility of the seminarian, and paid by him or his family.
2. Costs are paid by the (Arch)diocese, either directly to the seminarian or to the service provider on the seminarian’s behalf.
3. The (Arch)diocese provides a loan to the seminarian, with a written promissory note. The loan may provide for forgiveness of the debt if certain conditions are met.
4. The seminarian obtains an educational loan from a third-party lender, with a commitment from the (Arch)diocese to repay the loan on the seminarian’s behalf if certain conditions are met.

These four arrangements are not mutually exclusive; (Arch)dioceses may use a combination of the above arrangements in providing for the various financial needs of the seminarian.

Accounting Treatment

All costs paid by the (Arch)diocese to or on behalf of the seminarian without any expectation of repayment (arrangement #2 above), are to be recorded as an expense in the period incurred. Tuition payments made in advance of the semester or school year are to be recorded as prepaid tuition and amortized over the period in which the instruction occurs.

Loans made by the (Arch)diocese to the seminarian (arrangement #3 above) are to be recorded as such if, at the time of the loan, it is documented with a signed promissory note and there is a reasonable expectation of repayment or satisfaction of conditions stipulated for the forgiveness of the debt. A decision to recognize these payments as assets (loans/notes receivable) must be made in light of the Arch/Diocese’s past record of either collecting them or achieving the conditions stipulated for forgiveness. Loans to seminarians are to be reviewed regularly for collectability in the same manner as other loans and an allowance is to be provided (expense is to be recorded) in order to state the asset at its net realizable value whether for reasons of collectability or satisfaction or conditions stipulated for forgiveness. However, the reason would define the nature of the expense as either bad debt expense or a programmatic expense.

In some cases, a loan is interest free or has a below-market interest rate. In this situation, a portion of the loan is to be recognized as interest, and the loan should be recorded at the present value of the future estimated cash flows.

To calculate the portion of the recorded loan which represents interest, calculate the present value of the loan, using an applicable interest rate even though it may differ from the stated rate. This process is called imputing interest, and the resulting difference between the amount of the loan and the present value of the loan is to be recorded as a discount on the loan and as a program expense.

When determining an appropriate interest rate, to the extent possible, the (Arch)diocese would consider market inputs relevant to the loan being made. These might include the time value of money, credit standing of the borrower, collateral, duration of the loan, restrictive covenants, and liquidity. In the absence of market inputs, the (Arch)diocese would use its own assumptions about the assumptions that market participants would use under similar circumstances.
For example, a (Arch)diocese lends $100,000 to a seminarian to cover the cost of his education. The note is noninterest bearing, is unsecured, and a balloon payment is due at the end of the 5-year term. The (Arch)diocese determines that a market rate for a loan with the same terms and a borrower of equal credit worthiness as the seminarian is 15 percent. The present value of the contractual payments due under the loan is $49,720. Using the interest method, the (Arch)diocese would make the following entry:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loan receivable</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program Expense</td>
<td>$50,280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cash</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount on loan receivable (contra-asset a/c)</td>
<td>$50,280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use of the Interest Method while the loan is outstanding:

The discount on the loan is amortized as interest income over the life of the loan in such a way as to result in a constant rate of interest when applied to the amount outstanding at the beginning of any given period. The difference between the periodic interest cost calculated using the interest method and the nominal interest on the outstanding amount of the debt is the amount of periodic amortization. Continuing the example above, at the end of year 1, the (Arch)diocese would make the following entry to amortize the discount and record the imputed interest income at 15 percent of the implied principal amount of the loan ($49,720 x 15%):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discount on loan receivable (contra-asset a/c)</td>
<td>$ 7,458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest Income</td>
<td>$7,458</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a loan that is not impaired is forgiven and the (Arch)diocese communicates to the borrower that the amount is forgiven, the (Arch)diocese should recognize a program expense. In the case of loans that specify conditions for forgiveness, the outstanding loan balance is accounted for, as described above, as a loan receivable until all of the specific conditions are met. Once the conditions are met, the (Arch)diocese should adjust the outstanding loan balance to zero with a corresponding adjustment made to program expense. Communication of the forgiveness to the borrower is key to the classification, because in accordance with FASB ASC 405-20-40-1, the debt is not extinguished until the debtor is legally released from being the primary obligor under the liability. In the absence of that communication, the (Arch)diocese continues to act as a lender rather than a donor.

Commitments made by the (Arch)diocese to repay loans on the seminarian’s behalf (arrangement #4 above) are to be recorded as a liability when the conditions surrounding the commitment have substantially been met. When the conditions surrounding the commitment have substantially been met, the expense and the corresponding accrual should be recorded at fair value. Consideration should be given to disclosing the value of conditional commitments in the footnotes to the financial statements.

**Income Tax Considerations**

**Arrangement #1.** No tax consequences to the (Arch)diocese.

**Arrangement #2.** Under Internal Revenue Code section 117, amounts paid by the (Arch)diocese to or on behalf of a seminarian who is a degree candidate at an educational institution for tuition or amounts used for required books, supplies, fees and equipment are excludable from the seminarian’s income for federal income tax purposes as well as FICA and FUTA taxes. (Arch)dioceses do not have any IRS reporting or withholding requirements regarding taxable or non-taxable scholarship amounts unless any portion of the funds relates to payments for services rendered by the seminarian (see Taxability of Other Benefits and Payments, below). A recommended practice would be to provide each seminarian with an annual statement that informs him of any taxable amounts provided by the (Arch)diocese for each calendar year to assist the seminarian in preparing his own federal and state income tax returns. The statements should be delivered to the seminarian by January 31 of the year following the calendar year for which the taxable amounts were provided.
Arrangement #3. A bona fide loan made by the (Arch)diocese to the seminarian does not represent taxable income to the seminarian. However, subsequent forgiveness of the loan will usually result in taxable income to the seminarian, and should be reported as wages on Form W-2 (if the seminarian is an employee) or income on Form 1099-MISC (if he is an independent contractor). It is recommended that any discharge of indebtedness be done gradually so that the seminarian’s federal and state income tax liability associated with the discharge is spread over multiple years.

Arrangement #4. A commitment made by the (Arch)diocese to repay a loan on a seminarian’s behalf if certain conditions are met does not represent taxable income to the seminarian at the time the commitment is made. However, the (Arch)diocese’s subsequent repayment of such a loan on the seminarian’s behalf will usually result in taxable income to the seminarian for the reasons described in the previous paragraph, and should be reported as wages on Form W-2 (if the seminarian is an employee) or income on Form 1099-MISC (if he is an independent contractor).

Taxability of Other Benefits and Payments

No simple rule exists regarding the taxability of other benefits for seminarians. However, their employment status appears to be that of an employee. Seminarians often provide various types of services and receive various payments and items of value, while at the seminary and while serving in the parishes. These payments could easily be classified as payments for services. In addition, (Arch)diocese’s and parishes often supervise the time, manner and methods by which services are performed as well as the training the seminarian receives. Seminarians often use tools and supplies provided by the (Arch)diocese or parish. Seminarians are clearly not contractors engaged in these activities to make a profit, and they usually receive employee-type benefits such as health insurance. Given these circumstances, the tax relationship between the (Arch)diocese and the seminarian appears to be that of employer and employee. Additionally, seminarians are usually not ordained. Without meeting the requirements of Internal Revenue Code section 3401(9) and Treasury Regulation section 1.14029c)-5 which limit exemptions to “duly ordained, commissioned, or licensed room & board, personal travel expenses, medical insurance, out-of-pocket medical expenses, and living allowances or stipends, may be taxable to the seminarian if not exempt under another provision.

Typically, scholarships for tuition and fees, allowances for books, and the value of health insurance coverage may qualify to be excluded from income. However, since no code section provides for an exception to the general rule of inclusion, all relevant facts must be carefully considered regarding monthly living allowances and stipends before determining their taxability. Similarly, an argument could be made that the value of room and board, and auto insurance reimbursements should be included in the seminarian’s gross income. However, even if these types of payments do not qualify as exempt from income taxes based on the specific circumstances in an (Arch)diocese, they could be exempt from FICA and FUTA since services provided by student employees are exempted from the definition of employment for purposes of these taxes.
VIII. Deposit and Loan Programs

Many (Arch)dioceses, through their Administrative Offices or a separate legal entity, accept deposits from parishes, schools, agencies and/or other ecclesiastical entities within the (Arch)diocese. In turn, these funds are loaned to parishes and potentially other entities within the (Arch)diocesan community. Names for this may vary (deposit and loan fund, capital revolving fund, savings and loan program, etc.); but for the purposes of this chapter, this activity will be termed “deposit and loan fund” and/or “the Program.” In the majority of instances, the Program will be (1) one where the Administrator acts as a principal paying a return to depositors and charges interest to borrowers (diocesan program), (2) an investment and lending program that operates for the mutual benefit (mutual program) of the parishes and other participating agencies/entities of the (Arch)diocese (the participants bear the loan and investment risks and proceeds), or, (3) one where an option is given to the depositors to participate in a type (1) or type (2) arrangement (hybrid program).

Deposit rates should be reviewed (and adjusted as appropriate) on a periodic basis to remain attractive to depositors.

Loan rates should be reviewed (and adjusted as appropriate) on a periodic basis. Market rates and other (Arch)diocesan program rates may be used as benchmarks.

Civil Structure

The civil structure of the Program may vary from (Arch)diocese to (Arch)diocese depending upon the policies, (Arch)diocesan civil structure, applicable state laws, regulatory considerations, canonical determinations, and other financial and operating considerations of the (Arch)diocese. Examples of such structures would be as a separate Trust or as a separate Corporation. While some (Arch)dioceses elect to include the Program as a Fund within the existing civil structure of the (Arch)diocese, best practices suggest that careful consideration must be given to establishing either a Trust or Corporation to account for and report the operating activities of these programs. In addition, all entities within the (Arch)diocese eligible to participate in the Program should be clearly set forth by the governing documents of the Program.

Risk & Return Considerations

The financial risks and returns of a Program can either inure to the benefit of the sponsor (diocese, separate trust, corporation, etc.) of the Program or to the depositors participating in the Program. When designing the Program, an important consideration should be determining who will benefit from income and losses of the Program.

Advantages for Borrowers

The deposit and loan funds generally operate on a revolving basis where cash from parishes and others are accumulated and loaned out at an interest rate that may be less than that commercially available. Loan origination points, application charges, loan servicing fees, and the establishment of financial debt covenants are either non-existent or generally less than what commercial banking terms would be. Likewise, the internal loan documentation may be less rigorous for both parishes and (Arch)dioceses.

In addition, (Arch)dioceses are often in a more flexible position in regard to defaults.

Advantages to Depositors
The Program generally pays an attractive yield on deposits in the fund and conditions on withdrawals of funds may not be as restrictive as a typical financial institution. In addition, it may be reassuring to a parish community, including its pastor and the parish finance council, that their cash funds are maintained within a (Arch)diocesan Program.

Establishment of the Program

(Arch)diocesan entities with cash in excess of day-to-day operating requirements should be encouraged or required, according to the respective diocesan policy, to place their surplus cash or a portion thereof in the Program. The Program will promulgate policies that define the Program’s purpose, and provide accountability and transparency.

Operating, Investment and Lending Policies

The Program should be operated in a prudent manner. That includes the distribution of periodic statements of account to both the depositors and the borrowers.

The Program’s investment approach must be carefully evaluated and monitored. The investment asset allocation and the nature of the investments themselves should be designed to “match” the liquidity needs of the Program’s depositors. Generally, the investment approach should be conservative.

Loans should be (1) evaluated and approved based on financial projections furnished by prospective borrowers; (2) evidenced by formal promissory notes indicating repayment schedules and interest rates, signed by proper ecclesial authority – including the acknowledgement of the respective parish finance council representatives; and (3) regularly reviewed. The Program should utilize a standard promissory note that can be modified for certain borrower’s needs and/or specific terms and conditions. The promissory note should reference conformity to both Canon Law and the governing laws of the state in which the (Arch)diocese operates. Because the amounts loaned under the note are the patrimonies of other parishes and/or agencies within the territory of the (Arch)diocese, consideration should be given to disclosing this in the note and have the borrower acknowledge that such funds have been made available to it in a spirit of mutual assistance. Finally, the borrower should also acknowledge its legal and moral responsibility to repay the promissory note in a timely and responsible manner. A sample promissory note is included later in this chapter. Consideration should be given to identifying collateral for the loan, such as real estate that may be available for sale.

The regular review of the lending arrangement and of the credit status of the borrowers will usually include monitoring of the borrower’s financial condition, budgets and capital purchases.

The liquidity of the Program is important for operational purposes. Formal cash projections should be prepared using loan repayment schedules and anticipated loans, deposits, and withdrawals. Projections should be updated frequently and reviewed according to prescribed policy.

Allowance for Loan Losses

Provision should be made for loans that will be uncollectible in the ordinary course of operations. An allowance should be established so that loans can be written off when they are determined to be uncollectible. The approval for the write-off of loans as uncollectible should be substantiated. Reference should be made to Topic 310, Receivables, and specific disclosures about the credit quality of financing receivables and the allowance for loan losses. Pursuant to Accounting Standards Update No. 2010-20, the (Arch)diocese should make financial reporting disclosures to facilitate the users’ evaluation of the loans.
within the Program, including:

- The nature of credit risk inherent in the Program’s portfolio of financing receivables
- How that risk is analyzed and assessed in arriving at the allowance for loan losses
- The changes and reasons for those changes in the allowance for loan losses

At a minimum, all loans should be reviewed on an annual basis for collectability and allowances adjusted accordingly. Policies should be adopted that ensure consistency in loan collectability reviews.

**Financial Reporting**

For account reporting purposes, the recipients and users of the reports and the civil structure of the Program should be considered in determining the form and content of the report. These considerations would include, but not be limited to, those of “control” and “financial interest.”

In a (Arch)diocesan program, the Administrator of these funds should include the operation of the Program in its combined financial statements, and the footnotes to the financial statements should clearly state the Program’s purpose and its relationship to the (Arch)diocese. The (Arch)diocese may want to consider creating a separate financial report for the Program which can be presented to its depositors.

If the Program is a separate legal entity, a complete set of financial statements should be prepared in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles on an annual basis. It is recommended that the management or administrator of the Program consider having these statements audited independently by a CPA firm.

**Oversight**

It is recommended that the Program has an Administrative Committee, Board of Trustees, or Board of Directors, whose role is to meet on a periodic basis and:

- Review the financial position of the Program
- Review the loan portfolio and loan risk
- Approve significant new loans
- Provide guidance on investment of deposits, loan rates, and deposit rates
SAMPLE PROMISSORY NOTE – This is a sample document and should be reviewed by (Arch)diocesan counsel and tailored to the specific requirements of the (Arch)diocesan Deposit and Loan program.

Promissory Note

$ (Date)

For value received, _________, (Name of the Parish) – (City), a separate juridic person under the 1983 Code of Canon Law of the Roman Catholic Church and a parish within the (Arch)diocese of ___________ (“the Borrower”), promises to pay to the order of (insert name of the Program, the Trust or legal entity) (the “Trust” or the “Lender”), the lesser of $_________ or so much thereof as may have actually been advanced under the terms of this Note together with any interest accrued and unpaid until all amounts owing under this Note are paid in full. The parties acknowledge that the Lender has executed this Note to allow the Borrower to draw funds for the exclusive use of funding construction costs related to the “___________” (the Project). The parties further acknowledge that the loan proceeds are being used for the specified purposes only.

Borrower agrees to abide by the promises and agreements entered into under this Agreement.

Terms and Conditions:

1. Borrower is required to repay this Note in __ years from the date of the Project completion (Date of Completion). The Date of Completion shall be defined as the earlier of (i) 30 days after the Borrower is issued a certificate of occupancy or (ii) 30 days after the advancement of all the proceeds under the Note. Monthly payments, which include both principal and interest (the Payment) will be established based on a prepared amortization schedule which will be calculated based on the outstanding balance due on the Note and the Lender’s lending rate upon Date of Completion. Each payment of principal and interest shall be paid by the Borrower on the first of the month pursuant to the prepared amortization schedule, without any right of set-off or counterclaim to: (insert name and address of the Program, the Trust or legal entity). The initial payment shall be due on the first day of the month following the Date of Completion. If any payment under this Note becomes due and payable on a day other than a business day, the payment shall be due on the next succeeding business day, provided, however, that if the date for any payment of interest is extended as provided hereunder or by operation of law or otherwise, interest shall continue to accrue and be payable at the then applicable rate during such extension. Any payments required for any other fees, charges or miscellaneous payments will be invoiced to the Borrower and are due within 30 days after receipt.

a. Amortization Reset – The principal amortization schedule for this Note, as set forth in 1. above, may be adjusted one time during the term of the Note as the Borrower and the Lender shall agree (the “Amortization Reset”) in the event that (i) the Borrower prepays the principal amount owing with respect to any such Note in an aggregate amount equal to at least $50,000 (the “Prepayment Increment”) and (ii) such Prepayment Increment is made during the first twelve months from the Date of Completion (the “Reset Period”). At such time as a Prepayment Increment has been made with respect to the Note, then within the first 15 business days of the next succeeding calendar quarter, upon the written request of the Borrower, the Lender shall effect the Amortization Reset at the prevailing interest rate at that time and over the remaining term of the Note.

2. No additional advances will be made under the terms of this Note after the Date of Completion whether
or not the full amount of the Note has been drawn.

3. This Note has a variable interest rate feature. The interest rate on this Note may change from time to time if the rate identified below changes. Interest shall be computed on the basis of 365 days per year. Interest on this Note shall be calculated and payable at a variable rate equal to the Prime Rate (“Prime Rate”) as published in the Wall Street Journal. The current Prime Rate on this Note would be ___._ % per annum, assuming advances were made concurrent with the date of this Note. Interest rate changes on this Note will occur the first day of the month following the day that the Prime Rate changes. Interest shall accrue on each advance under this Note on the date such advance is loaned to Borrower. The Borrower should be aware that it may have a balloon payment due upon the maturity date of this Note due to the fluctuations in the interest over the term of the Note.

4. This Note allows for the prepayment of principal and interest amounts due hereunder, without a penalty.
   a. However, the Payment, as defined within this Note, must be made on time on the first of each month, regardless of prepayments until the outstanding principal, together with all accrued interest, is paid in full.
   b. Prepayments will not be considered in the determination of the Note’s past-due status or delinquency.
   c. The Borrower is past-due if the monthly Payment is made after the scheduled date (the first of each month) and delinquent if the monthly Payment is not made.

5. Upon Default, as defined herein, the interest rate on this Note shall be increased to the interest rate in effect at the time of Default, plus two percent (2%).

6. All pledge payments received by Borrower are to be sent to (insert name of the Program, the Trust or legal name of entity) and deposited into Borrower’s designated savings account until Borrower directs that they be used to make construction payments, scheduled Payments and/or to make Prepayment Increments until the outstanding principal together with all accrued interest is paid in full.

7. Lender reserves the right, at its sole discretion, to assign or sell all or any part of the outstanding indebtedness under this Note to a commercial lending institution of Lender’s choosing at any time.

8. The terms and conditions of this Note are governed by the particular laws of the (Arch)diocese of ________.
Covenants

Until the Note is paid in full, together with any and all accrued and unpaid interest thereon and all other amounts due hereunder (Other fees, charges or miscellaneous payments as defined below) are paid and satisfied in full, and this Promissory Note has been terminated, the Borrower covenants and agrees that it will:

1. Use all loan proceeds solely for the Borrower’s funding toward the Project.

2. Promptly inform Lender in writing of (i) all adverse changes in the financial condition of the Borrower; and (ii) any and all matters affecting the Borrower that could materially affect the Borrower’s financial condition.

3. The Borrower recognizes its obligations to repay the indebtedness referenced herein and commits that such repayment obligation shall always hold a preeminent position in current and future budgeting and planning. Borrower also recognizes that it may need to reduce its future operating budgets in order to accommodate the debt service of this Note.

4. Borrower must continually re-evaluate its ten (10) year forecast, provided to (insert the name of the Program, the Trust or legal name of entity) dated as of ________, to ensure that it can balance its operating budget, (i.e. revenues must exceed or equal expenditures, including debt and interest payments).

5. Borrower must encourage parishioners to remain faithful to their offertory donations during the pledge payment period.

6. Borrower covenants and agrees that it will not incur any additional indebtedness until the Note has been paid in full without the prior written approval of the (insert name of the Program, the Trust or legal name of entity). A violation of this covenant shall be deemed an event of default under the terms of the Note.

7. Perform and comply with all terms, conditions and provisions set forth under the Note, and promptly notify Lender of the occurrence or imminent occurrence of any event or circumstance that may constitute a Default under this Note and/or the other obligations of Borrower.

8. (Add other relevant covenants as necessary)
Events of Default and Lender Remedies

1. If any one or more of the following events occur and be continuing, it shall constitute a “Default” by Borrower:
   a. **Non-payment.** Borrower shall fail to pay the principal and interest hereunder when due (whether as stated or at maturity, by acceleration or otherwise), within five (5) business days after the principal or interest shall become due and payable, or shall fail to pay any other fees, charges or miscellaneous payments payable hereunder within 30 days after such other fees are invoiced; and fails to notify the Lender (or respective entity managing the Program) prior to the end of such five or thirty day period or such earlier time as the payment at issue is otherwise due, that Borrower is unable to meet its repayment obligation(s) hereunder; or,
   b. **Compliance.** Borrower shall fail to comply with the Covenants and any other terms and conditions of this Note, or fails to comply with the terms and conditions of any other agreement between Borrower and Lender; or
   c. **Material adverse change in financial condition.** Any material adverse change in Borrower’s financial condition, either as disclosed to Lender by Borrower or as determined by Lender in review of Borrower’s routine financial reports and other information.

2. Remedies in the Event of Borrower Default.
   a. **Other Action as Warranted.** Lender may take such action as may be lawful and, in Lender’s sole discretion, is deemed warranted with respect to the outstanding obligations of Borrower to Lender hereunder, including the acceleration of the indebtedness, and Lender shall be entitled to all such remedies as legal and equitable principles allow.

Representations, Warranties and Other

1. The Borrower acknowledges that the amounts provided under this Note are the patrimonies of other parishes and organizations within the territory of the (Arch)diocese of ____________ that have been generously made available to it in a spirit of unity and mutual assistance. The Borrower also acknowledges its legal and moral responsibility to repay this Note in a timely and responsible manner and pledges to do the same.

2. The Borrower agrees not to assign any of the Borrower’s rights or obligations described in this Note without the prior written consent of Lender, which consent may be withheld by Lender in its sole discretion. The Borrower agrees that Lender is entitled to assign some or all of its rights and remedies described in this Note with appropriate notice to Borrower but in which no consent from the Borrower is required.

3. The Borrower agrees to make payment to Lender at any address designated by Lender and in lawful United States currency. The Borrower waives presentment, demand for payment, notice of dishonor and protest and further waives any right to require Lender to proceed against anyone else before proceeding against the Borrower. This Note shall be binding upon the heirs, successors and assigns of the Borrower and Lender. This Note represents the complete and integrated understanding between the Borrower and Lender regarding the terms hereof and may not be modified, amended or waived except by a written instrument duly executed by both parties.

4. Borrower hereby represents and warrants that this Note constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of Borrower enforceable in accordance with its terms, except to the extent that enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar laws of general application relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditor’s rights from time to time in effect.
5. To the extent permitted by law, the Borrower agrees to pay Lender’s reasonable attorney’s fees and other costs incurred in collecting any amount due or enforcing any right or remedy under this Note, including audit or internal investigation fees incurred should there be a material adverse change in the Borrower’s financial condition.

6. This Note shall be governed in all respects by the laws of the State of __________ and the Code of Canon Law of the Roman Catholic Church.

BORROWER:

(Name of the Parish), a parish of the (Arch)diocese of __________

By: Reverend ____________, Pastor

Witnessed and approved by the Parish Finance Council for (Name of Parish)

By: _____________________________________ (Name of Chairperson), Chairperson, (Name of Parish)
Parish Finance Council
IX. (Arch)diocesan Finance Councils

Canon 492 of the Code of Canon Law mandates all (Arch)dioceses to establish a finance council:

Canon 492-§1. In every (Arch)diocese a finance council is to be established, over which the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop himself or his delegate presides and which consists of at least three members of the Christian faithful truly expert in financial affairs and civil law, outstanding in integrity, and appointed by the (Arch)bishop.

§2. Members of the finance council are to be appointed for five years, but at the end of this period they can be appointed for other five-year terms.

§3. Persons who are related to the (Arch)bishop up to the fourth degree of consanguinity or affinity are excluded from the finance council.

Roles and Responsibilities of the Finance Council

The (Arch)diocese should prepare a charter for the finance council that includes, at a minimum, the following roles and responsibilities (a sample charter is included later in this chapter). The finance council must prepare the annual (Arch)diocesan budget according to the instruction of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop (c. 493). (While the annual budget may initially be prepared by the staff of the (Arch)diocese, final approval and recommendation to the (Arch)bishop rests with the finance council.)

The finance council must examine the annual report of income and expenditures prepared by the (Arch)diocesan finance officer (cc. 493, 494). (This examination may take the form of reviewing the annual audited financial statements as presented by the (Arch)diocese's independent auditors.)

The finance council is to give counsel to the (Arch)bishop on the following:

1. Appointment of a finance officer (c. 494)
2. Removal of the finance officer (c. 494)
3. Imposition of taxes, either ordinary or extraordinary (c. 1263)
4. Decisions relative to the more important acts of administration (It is for the conference of bishops to define what is meant by acts of extraordinary administration.) (c. 1277)
5. Determination of the meaning of acts of extraordinary administration for institutes subject to his control if the statutes are not specific (c. 1281.2)
6. Review of annual reports submitted to him by clerical and lay administrators of any ecclesiastical goods (c. 1287.1)
7. Leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by the (Arch)diocese when the market value of the property to be leased exceeds $400,000 (see Chapter XVI, subtopic: Leasing, c. 1297 and USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1297)
8. Investment of tangible and intangible property assigned to an endowment (c. 1305)
9. Modification of the obligations imposed in executing last wills for pious causes if such obligations cannot be fulfilled (c. 1310.2)

The finance council must give or withhold consent to the (Arch)bishop on the following:

- Performance of an act of extraordinary administration as defined by the United States
Conference of Catholic Bishops (USCCB) (c. 1277):

i. Initiating a program of financing by the issuance of instruments such as bonds, annuities, mortgages or bank debt in excess of the minimum amount set in accord with Canon 1292 § 1.

ii. Resolving an individual or aggregate claim(s) by financial settlement in excess of the minimum amount set in accord with Canon 1292 § 1.

iii. Engaging in the regular management or operation of a trade or business that is not substantially related to the performance of the religious, spiritual, educational or charitable purposes of the Church, for the purpose of generating income to carry on such activities.

iv. Entering into any financial transaction or contractual agreement, the terms of which address matters involving an actual or potential conflict of interest for the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop, auxiliary bishop(s), vicar(s) general, episcopal vicar(s), or the (Arch)diocesan finance officer.

- Leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by the (Arch)diocese when the market value of the property to be leased exceeds $1,000,000 or the lease is to be for three years or longer (see Chapter XVI, subtopic: Leasing, c. 1297 and USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1297)

- Alienation of property at or above the “minimum” amount established by the USCCB (c. 1292 § 1) (see Chapter XVI, subtopic: Alienation and Acts of Ordinary and Extraordinary Administration)

- Alienation of property of other public juridic persons subject to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop at or above the “minimum” amount established by the USCCB (c. 1292 § 1) (see Chapter XVI, subtopic: Alienation and Acts of Ordinary and Extraordinary Administration)

- In addition to alienation, the entering into any transaction that worsens the financial condition of the (Arch)diocese (c. 1295)

Be aware that consent must also be obtained from the Holy See for alienation of property given to the Church by vow, property precious for artistic or historical reasons or when the value of the property exceeds the “maximum” amount established by the USCCB (see Chapter XVI, subtopic: Alienation and Acts of Ordinary and Extraordinary Administration). Consent of the Holy See is also required for the valid leasing of ecclesiastical goods when the market value of the goods exceeds $5,000,000. (See USCCB Complementary Norms for Canon 1297—Leasing of Church Property.)

Other

The (Arch)diocese should consult with its canon lawyer to clarify the role of the (Arch)diocesan finance council and ensure that it operates consistent with canon law. In addition to specific canon law requirements, (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishops should consider consulting with their finance councils on the following:

- Appointment of auditors (In addition, the (Arch)diocesan finance council should perform the audit committee oversight role if an audit committee does not exist, including oversight of financial management policies and the implementation thereof.
- Appointment of legal counsel
- Employee compensation and benefits
- Insurance and risk management
- Property management
- Construction management
Investment policies
Internal controls
Development (fundraising) – See USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1262 (effective August 15, 2007) and U.S. Catholic bishops, Principles and Guidelines for Fund Raising in the United States by (Arch)diocese, (Arch)diocesan Agencies and Religious Institutes (November 16, 1977), available from the USCCB Finance Office
Banking arrangements
Fulfilling the requirements of the Resolution on (Arch)diocesan Financial Reporting that became effective January 1, 2001

At its General Meeting in November 2000, the (Arch)bishops unanimously adopted a Resolution on (Arch)diocesan Financial Reporting, effective January 1, 2001 requesting each suffragan bishop to send an annual letter to his metropolitan archbishop (and each metropolitan archbishop to send an annual letter to the senior suffragan bishop in the province) specifying compliance with certain provisions of canon law. At its November 2011 meeting the Resolution was extended to remain in effect through November 2016. The finance council should assist the (Arch)bishop in fulfilling the requirements of the resolution. The resolution and reporting form are reproduced later in this chapter.
ARTICLE I
The name of this body shall be the (Arch)diocesan Finance Council referred to sometimes as “AFC”

ARTICLE II
Purpose

The (Arch)diocesan Finance Council is one of the three major councils of the Archdiocese of N. It is established by the Archbishop for the purpose of advising and assisting him in financial matters.

The finance council must prepare the annual (Arch)diocesan budget. (While the annual budget may initially be prepared by the staff of the archdiocese, final approval and recommendation to the (Arch)bishop rests with the finance council.)

The finance council must examine the annual report of income and expenditures prepared by the (Arch)diocesan finance officer. (This examination may take the form of reviewing the annual audited financial statements as presented by the archdiocese's independent auditors.)

The finance council must give or withhold consent to the archbishop on the following:

- Performance of an act of extraordinary administration as defined by the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops (USCCB) (c. 1277):
  i.Initiating a program of financing by the issuance of instruments such as bonds, annuities, mortgages or bank debt in excess of the minimum amount set in accord with Canon 1292 § 1.
  ii. Resolving an individual or aggregate claim(s) by financial settlement in excess of the minimum amount set in accord with Canon 1292 § 1.
  iii. Engaging in the regular management or operation of a trade or business that is not substantially related to the performance of the religious, spiritual, educational or charitable purposes of the Church, for the purpose of generating income to carry on such activities.
  iv. Entering into any financial transaction or contractual agreement, the terms of which address matters involving an actual or potential conflict of interest for the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop, auxiliary bishop(s), vicar(s) general, episcopal vicar(s), or the (Arch)diocesan finance officer.

- Leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by the archdiocese when the market value of the property to be leased exceeds $1,000,000 or the lease is to be for three years or longer (c. 1297 and USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1297)

- Alienation of property at or above the amount established by the USCCB (c. 1292 § 1) and updated annually based on the consumer price index.

- Alienation of property of other public juridic persons subject to the archbishop at or above the amount established by the USCCB (c. 1292 § 1) and updated annually based on the consumer price index.

- In addition to alienation, the entering into any transaction that worsens the financial condition of the archdiocese (c. 1295)

The finance council is to give counsel to the archbishop on the following:
1. Appointment of a finance officer (c. 494)
2. Removal of the finance officer (c. 494)
3. Imposition of taxes, either ordinary or extraordinary (c. 1263)
4. Decisions relative to the more important acts of administration (It is for the conference of bishops to define what is meant by acts of extraordinary administration.) (c. 1277)
5. Determination of the meaning of acts of extraordinary administration for institutes subject to his control if the statutes are not specific (c. 1281.2)
6. Review of annual reports submitted to him by clerical and lay administrators of any ecclesiastical goods (c. 1287.1)
7. Leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by the archdiocese when the market value of the property to be leased exceeds $400,000 (c. 1297 and USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1297)
8. Investment of tangible and intangible property assigned to an endowment (c. 1305)
9. Modification of the obligations imposed in executing last wills for pious causes if such obligations cannot be fulfilled (c. 1310.2)

In addition to the canon law requirements outlined above, the finance council will also advise the archbishop with regard to the following:

- Appointment of auditors (In addition, the finance council will perform the audit committee oversight role, including oversight of financial management policies and the implementation thereof.)
- Appointment of legal counsel
- Employee compensation and benefits
- Insurance and risk management
- Property management
- Construction management
- Investment policies
- Internal controls
- Development (fundraising)—See USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1262 (effective August 15, 2007) and U.S. Catholic bishops, *Principles and Guidelines for Fund Raising in the United States by (Arch)dioceses, (Arch)diocesan Agencies and Religious Institutes* (November 16, 1977), available from the USCCB Finance Office
- Banking arrangements
- Fulfilling the requirements of the Resolution on (Arch)diocesan Financial Reporting that became effective January 1, 2001

**ARTICLE III Membership**

AFC shall be composed of not fewer than 19 persons, including the Archbishop of N., or the person who, in his stead, exercises ordinary jurisdiction over the spiritual and temporal affairs of the Archdiocese of N. in accordance with legislation of the Roman Catholic Church and the Vicar General of the Archdiocese.

1. Two members of this Council shall be elected by the Archdiocesan Pastoral Council.

2. Two members of this Council shall be priests serving the Archdiocese of N., elected by the Presbyteral Council of the Archdiocese.

3. One member of this Council shall be a religious sister serving the Archdiocese of N., elected by the Sisters Council of the Archdiocese.
4. One member of this Council shall be a permanent deacon, serving the Archdiocese of N., elected by the Deacon Council of the Archdiocese.

5. At least eight members of this Council shall be appointed to at-large positions by the Archbishop.

6. Three members of this Council shall be appointed by the Archbishop as:
   a. Chair of the Archdiocesan Finance Council
   b. Chair of the Revenue Committee
   c. Chair of the Allocations Committee

The Vicar of Finance shall also be an ex-officio, non-voting member of this Council.

It shall be the responsibility of each of the six elected members of the AFC to communicate non-confidential the activities and recommendations of the AFC to the body which elected each such member and to encourage that body to exercise care in the election of its members to ensure its representatives have the interest and time to serve, and to communicate to the AFC the observations or recommendations of the organizations which elected them in regards to matters being considered by the AFC.

ARTICLE IV Term of Office

1. The regular term of office of the elected or appointed at-large members of the AFC shall be five years, with approximately one-third of those members' terms expiring each year.

2. No elected or appointed at-large members shall serve more than two consecutive five-year terms.

3. The Chair of the Revenue Committee and the Chair of the Allocations Committee shall be appointed to a two-year term. These Chairs may not serve more than three consecutive two-year terms. The Chair of this Council shall be appointed for a one-year term.

ARTICLE V Vacancies

Vacancies on the AFC by reason of resignation, death, disability, termination of office, or otherwise, shall be filled by the same constituency or person which originally selected the member whose position has become vacant.

ARTICLE VI Officers and Duties

The officers of the AFC shall be a Chair and a Vice-Chair.

1. The Chair of this Council shall conduct all meetings of the AFC and its Executive Committee.

2. The Vice-Chair of the Council shall act in the place of the Chair when the Chair is absent or unable to attend a meeting of the AFC or the Executive Committee, and shall assist the Chair in the performance of the Chair's duties. The Vice-Chair shall be appointed by the Archbishop from among the membership of the Council for a one-year term.

ARTICLE VII Meetings

Meetings of the AFC shall be held at the call of either the Archbishop, the Chair, or by a majority of the full membership of the AFC. The Vicar of Finance shall provide the necessary staff support for effective
ARTICLE VIII Committees

There shall be an Executive Committee and two standing committees of the AFC. The standing committees shall be the Revenue Committee and the Allocations Committee. All AFC members shall serve on at least one of the three committees. Members may indicate their committee preference prior to appointment.

The Vicar of Finance shall provide the necessary staff support for effective meetings of all committees of the AFC.

1. Executive Committee: There shall be an Executive Committee composed of the Archbishop or his delegate, the Chair of the AFC, who shall be the Chair of the Executive Committee, the Vice-Chair of the AFC, the Chair of the Revenue Committee, the Chair of the Allocations Committee, and two members of the AFC elected to one-year terms by the AFC.

   The Executive Committee shall be responsible for the affairs of the Council between meetings, adoption of a yearly schedule of AFC meetings, preparing agendas for the AFC meetings, assigning AFC members to the standing committees, approving the annual plans and schedules of standing committees, recommending policies and procedures guiding the budget process and the operations of the AFC, and for determining the purpose, membership and term of each ad hoc committee. It shall report all of its activities and actions to the AFC at the next meeting of the AFC for ratification.

2. Revenue Committee: The Revenue Committee shall consist of a Chair appointed by the Archbishop, at least five members of the AFC appointed by the Executive Committee, and up to five or six others recommended by the AFC Revenue Committee members and approved by the Archbishop for three-year terms.

   The Revenue Committee shall review and coordinate revenue projections of all sources of operating and capital funds, and assist and advise on the annual and multi-year fundraising strategies and efforts of the (Arch)diocesan Central Corporation prior to any major fundraising campaigns.

   The Revenue Committee acts as a central area for communications on all major fundraising by agencies, departments, and institutions both inside and outside the (Arch)diocesan Corporation to help monitor and coordinate these efforts.

3. Allocations Committee: The Allocations Committee shall consist of a Chair appointed by the Archbishop, at least five members of the AFC appointed by the Executive Committee and the Chairs of the Allocation Panels. Allocation Panel Chairs shall be suggested by the Allocations Committee Chair, recommended by the AFC and approved by the Archbishop for a one-year term.

   The Allocations Committee and its panel, each consisting of up to six persons appointed to staggered three-year terms by the Allocations Committee Chair, shall review the three-year and annual proposals for new and expanded programs, the three-year goals and annual objectives and the three-year and annual budgets of each department and agency requesting funds from the Central Corporation, and it shall prepare recommendations for the AFC on them. The panels shall further establish contact with their respective agencies/departments, conduct budget hearings, and prepare and present to the Allocations Committee recommendations from their respective panels.

   The Allocations Committee shall annually prepare a recommended total budget including funds
and comments on existing, expanded and new programs, from the panel recommendations and submit it to the Archbishop’s Cabinet and the AFC. The Allocations Committee and its panels shall review needs on a year-round basis and recommend to the AFC such changes in allocations as it deems necessary.

The Revenue and Allocations Committees shall work closely with the division directors and other staff as appropriate, to become informed about proposals, plans and studies that can impact revenue or spending, the goals or objectives of departments and agencies, and strategies and funding to achieve them.

ARTICLE IX Quorum and Voting

A majority of the full membership shall be necessary and sufficient to constitute a quorum for the transactions of business at all meetings of the AFC and its committees so long as all the members of the council or committees were properly notified of the meeting in accordance with canon 127. The act of a majority of the members present at any meeting at which there is a quorum shall be the act of the AFC or its committees.

ARTICLE X Amendments

Amendments to these statutes shall be proposed at any meeting of the AFC, following a two-week notice, and if approved by two-thirds of the full membership of the AFC they shall be proposed to the Archbishop. They shall become effective upon approval by the Archbishop.

(Arch)diocesan Financial Reporting—USCCB Resolution

The (Arch)diocesan finance council has a recommended reporting responsibility in accord with the 2000 USCCB resolution on (Arch)diocesan financial reporting.

Bishop Joseph A. Fiorenza, then-President of the National Conference of Catholic Bishops (NCCB; later the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops), appointed an Ad Hoc Committee on Diocesan Financial Reporting, chaired by Bishop Joseph P. Delaney, to study ways in which bishops could better acknowledge their compliance with the requirements of canon law for financial reporting. This preamble and resolution were approved by the body of bishops at their November 2000 General Meeting.

Preamble

In 1971 the NCCB published (Arch)diocesan Accounting and Financial Reporting. In the Prologue the Manual says "the bishops of the United States recognize that these limited material resources have to be managed more effectively than ever before. To accomplish this, each ordinary and his managers need an accounting and reporting system which will reflect the financial condition and the results of (Arch)diocesan operations in a rational and meaningful manner. . . . The prime objective of this Manual is to present a system of accounting and financial reporting which is usable by each and every (Arch)diocese in the United States. This will permit financial reporting to the ordinary, the Catholic community, or the community at large."

In 1983 the Conference published Accounting Principles and Reporting Practices for Churches and Church-Related Organizations in which it was stated "a wide variety of individuals and groups is interested in the financial statements of Churches and Church-related organizations. Among them are governance, communicants and contributors, service beneficiaries, members of the organization's board of trustees, employees of the organizations, governmental agencies providing funds for programs and services,
creditors and potential creditors, and constituent organizations.”

Also in 1983, Pope John Paul II promulgated the revised *Code of Canon Law, Codex Iuris Canonici*.

Canons 492-494 provide for the establishment of (Arch)diocesan finance councils, the preparation of (Arch)diocesan budgets, and the responsibilities of the (Arch)diocesan finance officer. Canons 1276-1278 discuss the responsibilities of (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishops with regard to the administration of goods, consultation with the finance council and college of consultors and delegation of responsibilities to the finance officer. Canon 1284 enumerates specific duties of administrators of ecclesiastical goods. Canon 436 describes the competence of the metropolitan in suffragan (Arch)dioceses.

In 1995 the Committee on Budget and Finance published a framework *(Arch)diocesan Internal Controls*. In its foreword, Archbishop Thomas J. Murphy, Treasurer, said that "canon 1284 states that all administrators are to perform their duties with the diligence of a ‘good householder.’ The (Arch)bishop can delegate the authority but not the responsibility. He has the duty to ensure that no abuses exist in the administration of church goods within the (Arch)diocese." The executive summary of that document points out, "Although the (Arch)bishop will not become too involved in the details of the internal control system, he is the only person who has the power to ensure that each area of a (Arch)diocese carries out its responsibility for the system. The proper tone must be set at the top of the organization, and for a (Arch)diocese, this is the (Arch)bishop."

Chapter 2 provides, "The (Arch)bishop, as head of the organization, should assume ownership of the system of internal control. He is responsible for ensuring integrity, ethics, competence, and other factors of a positive control environment. The (Arch)bishop fulfills his responsibilities by providing leadership to his senior management team, who shape the values, principles and operating policies that are the basis for a strong internal control system. . . . The (Arch)bishop and his representatives, therefore, establish a controlled environment that ensures effective communications and sets up monitoring procedures."

That document went on to say, "The finance council of a (Arch)diocese should have a significant role in the internal control function of a (Arch)diocese and in providing direction, guidance, and oversight to the (Arch)bishop. In addition to its advisory capacity, the finance council has specific rights and duties under canon law."

Having considered the almost thirty-year history of this Conference's interest in the promotion of responsibility and good stewardship over the ecclesiastical goods entrusted to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop, this Committee proposes that the bishops of the United States now consider how they might provide fraternal support to each other in some collegial manner while at the same time respecting the principle of subsidiarity and the desire to not burden any person or office with unrealistic responsibility that might encroach on the legitimate rights of a (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop to manage his (Arch)diocese.

The Committee proposes that the Conference consider some advertentia that is, helping (Arch)bishops pay attention to the law of the Church and confirming that each is doing so. The Committee proposes that each suffragan bishop would provide an affirmative statement to his metropolitan archbishop that he is in compliance with the canon law and, therefore, proposes the following be adopted as a resolution of the National Conference of Catholic Bishops. As we are all called to the proper administration of the Church's temporal goods in Book V of the *Code of Canon Law*, the submission of a statement is understood to mean that fiscal matters are being addressed in a timely and appropriate manner.

The (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop (under church law) has ecclesial and civil responsibility for the management of the (Arch)diocese. Church law provides a context and direction to the (Arch)bishop in the
exercise of these responsibilities (as described in the preliminary statement); and therefore this resolution is offered to assist the (Arch)bishop in the exercise of his duties and not to change or diminish those responsibilities.

Resolution

Annually, after the end of the fiscal year, each suffragan bishop is asked to send a letter to his metropolitan archbishop containing:

1. The names and professional titles of the members of his (Arch)diocesan finance council; The dates on which the finance council has met during the preceding fiscal year and since the end of that fiscal year.

2. A statement signed by the finance council members and the finance officer stating that they have met, reviewed, and discussed the [audited] financial statements of the (Arch)diocese and the management letter, if any, for that fiscal year and have reviewed the management letter and the recommendations made by the auditors.

3. A statement that the finance council was consulted in accord with the prescriptions of canon law.

The metropolitan archbishop will provide this same letter to the senior suffragan bishop in the province.

This resolution became effective January 1, 2012, and has subsequently been renewed through November 2016.

NOTE: A sample (Arch)diocesan financial reporting form can be found on the following page.
SAMPLE

(ARCH) DIOCESAN FINANCIAL REPORTING FORM

Name and Professional Titles of (Arch)diocesan Finance Council Members

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Arch)diocesan Finance Council Meeting Dates

1.
2.
3.
4.
| etc. |       |

(Arch)diocesan Finance Council and Finance Officer Attestation

We have met, reviewed and discussed the [audited] financial statements of the (insert name of (Arch)diocese) and the management letter for the fiscal year ended (insert year) including the recommendations made by the auditors.

We have been consulted in accord with the prescriptions of canon law.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIGNATURE</th>
<th>PRINTED NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
X. (Arch)diocesan Finance Officer

Canon Law

Canon 494 — §1. In every (Arch)diocese, after having heard the college of consultors and the finance council, the (Arch)bishop is to appoint a finance officer who is truly expert in financial affairs and absolutely distinguished for honesty.

§2. The finance officer is to be appointed for a five-year term but can be appointed for other five-year terms at the end of this period. The finance officer is not to be removed while in this function except for a grave cause to be assessed by the (Arch)bishop after he has heard the college of consultors and the finance council.

§3. It is for the finance officer to administer the goods of the (Arch)diocese under the authority of the (Arch)bishop in accord with the budget determined by the finance council and, from the income of the (Arch)diocese, to meet expenses which the (Arch)bishop or others designated by him have legitimately authorized.

§4. At the end of the year, the finance officer must render an account of receipts and expenditures to the finance council.

Qualifications

The (Arch)diocesan finance officer may be a cleric or a layperson in communion with the Church and must be someone of high integrity and an expert in financial matters. A certified public accountant or someone with similar qualifications and experience usually is preferred.

Position Description

Each (Arch)diocese should develop a position description for the finance officer that describes the qualifications, duties, and reporting responsibilities for the position. The position description also should include clear requirements, expectations, and relationships that will exist with other offices in the (Arch)diocese.

Other References

XI. Federal Funding

General

The past several decades have seen huge increases in federal awards to state and local governments and non-profit organizations. Many of these federal awards are of a social service nature and have been granted to church-related organizations interested in meeting the needs of the underprivileged in this country (e.g., foster care grants to Catholic Charities). As the amounts awarded to governmental units and non-profit organizations have increased, so have the attempts to ensure that such funds are spent as intended and that such funds are not subject to fraud, waste, and abuse. Additionally, the terms of federal awards are becoming more restrictive with regard to the religious character that may be involved with the use of those funds. Accordingly, care should be exercised to safeguard the free exercise of our Catholic faith. Failure to spend funds in accordance with grant terms can result in disallowed costs or permanent loss of funding.

Certain organizations expending $500,000 ($750,00 effective for fiscal years beginning on or after Jan. 1, 2015) or more in federal awards are subject to the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (P.L. 104-156), as well as the United States Office of Management and Budget's (OMB) Circular A133, Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations.

In accordance with the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide, Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits, “the Single Audit should cover the entire operations of the auditee, or at the option of the auditee, the audit may include a series of audits that cover departments, agencies and other organizational units that expended or otherwise administered federal awards during the fiscal year, provided that each audit encompasses the financial statements and schedule of expenditures of federal awards for each such department, agency and organizational unit.”

In defining the entity to be audited, the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide, Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits states, “One of the initial tasks during the planning process of a single audit is determining whether management has properly defined the entity to be audited. Circular A-133 states that single audits should cover the entire operations of the auditee. However, Circular A-133 provides the auditee the option to meet the audit requirements of the circular through a series of audits that cover an auditee’s departments, agencies, and other organizational units that expended or otherwise administered federal awards during a fiscal year. If an auditee elects this option, separate financial statements and a schedule of expenditures of federal awards should be prepared for such department, agency or other organizational unit. In these circumstances, an auditee’s organization-wide financial statements may also include departments, agencies or organizational units that have separate audits and prepare separate financial statements.
Recipients of federal funds subject to OMB Circular A-133 include non-profit organizations such as colleges and universities, hospitals, museums, libraries, and health and welfare agencies. These entities operate in an environment that often has two specific attributes:

1. These organizations often carry out the programs legislated by Congress. To do that, they receive federal grants and contracts that include certain terms and conditions that must be met. Administrative rules and cost principles, as well as specific statutory requirements, dictate the responsibilities imposed by the receipt of federal funds. A considerable amount of federal government guidance on audits of these organizations deals with the receipt and expenditure of such awards.

2. These organizations generally have tax-exempt status under applicable provisions of the Internal Revenue Code. As a condition of receiving tax-exempt status, many of these non-profit organizations agree to limit or handle in accordance with federal regulations certain activities (e.g., lobbying, operating a business that is not related to the exempt purpose, etc.).

**Responsibilities of the Receiving Organization**

By accepting donations from individuals or organizations that have attached restrictions to the donation, an organization incurs a legal and moral obligation to adhere to the restrictions imposed by the donor. The clear alternative is not to accept the donations. Federal awards are no different in this respect. The receipt of federal funds in any form as explained below implicitly acknowledges acceptance of grant-imposed responsibilities. Ignoring or inadequately adhering to these requirements may cause the federal agency to refuse further funding or even require the return of the federal funds granted.

It should be noted that non-profit organizations may receive federal funds directly (i.e., from the federal government) or indirectly (i.e., the funds may be passed through from state or local governments or other non-profit organizations). Even if the funds are received indirectly, the organization is still subject to A-133 requirements.

**Data Collection Form**

One of the products of an audit conducted in accordance with OMB Circular A-133 is the completion of form SF-SAC, *Data Collection Form for Reporting on Audits of States, Local Governments and Nonprofit Organizations*. The form summarizes information regarding the grantee, the auditor work performed, and the results of the audit work, including any findings. Parts of the form are to be completed by the auditor and other parts are to be completed by the grantee. The completed form is to be electronically signed by the auditor and the grantee and electronically submitted along with the grantee’s reporting package, to the Single Audit Clearinghouse in Jeffersonville, Indiana. The clearinghouse uses the information to ensure all covered entities have a Single Audit and to create a database that summarizes results from all single audits. The electronically submitted package is made available to the Federal granting agencies.
Defining Federal Awards

Federal awards include not only cash but also other types of assistance. There are fifteen types of assistance, of which seven are financial and eight are nonfinancial.

Financial Types

- Formula grants
- Project grants
- Direct payments for specified use
- Direct payments with unrestricted use
- Direct loans
- Guaranteed or insured loans
- Insurance

Nonfinancial Types

- Sale, exchange, or donation of property and goods
- Use of property, facilities, and equipment
- Provision of specialized services
- Advisory services and counseling
- Dissemination of technical information
- Training
- Investigation of complaints
- Federal employment

Compliance with Laws and Regulations

An exhaustive analysis of the requirements imposed on an organization receiving federal funds is beyond the scope of this section. What follows is general background information on the kinds of requirements to which an organization may subject itself, as well as some direction for how to determine conclusively what the organization must do to meet those requirements. These compliance requirements subject to audit testing are found in the OMB Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement.

a. Activities allowed or unallowed. Requires that the types of goods or services purchased with federal awards be specified as allowable under program requirements.

b. Allowable costs/cost principles. Prescribe direct and indirect costs allowable as costs of federally funded programs. (These are further described in various OMB circulars; generally the one impacting not for profits is OMB Circular A-122.)

c. Cash management. Requires recipients to have procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by the recipient.

d. Davis-Bacon Act. Requires that, when required by federal grant program legislation, wage rates paid to laborers on federally financed construction projects at least equal regionally prevailing rates.

e. Eligibility. Specifies the criteria for determining the individuals, groups of individuals, or sub-recipients that can participate in the program and the amounts for which they qualify.
f. **Equipment and real property management.** Requires organizations to maintain an equipment and property management system for its federal award programs and related activities in accordance with certain federal standards.

g. **Matching, level of effort, earmarking.** Requires that an organization receiving federal awards contribute its own resources to programs funded in some specified ratio to resources provided by the funding source.

h. **Period of availability of federal funds.** Requires—where a funding period is specified—that a recipient charge to the grant only allowable costs resulting from obligations incurred during the funding period and any pre-award costs or carryover balances authorized by the federal awarding agency and the applicable cost circular.

i. **Procurement and suspension and debarment.** Requires the following:
   1. That recipients establish procedures for the procurement of supplies and other expendable property, equipment, real property, and other services with federal funds to ensure that such materials and services are obtained in an effective manner and in compliance with the provisions of applicable federal statutes and executive orders.
   2. That contracts not be made to parties that are suspended or debarred or whose principals are suspended or debarred.

j. **Program income.** Requires that gross income received which is directly generated by the federally-funded project during the grant period be retained by the recipient and used in accordance with federal awarding agency regulations or the terms and conditions of the award.

k. **Real property acquisition and relocation assistance.** These requirements deal with real property acquisition, appraisal, negotiation, and relocation when federal awards are used.

l. **Reporting.** Requires that specific reports be filed and stipulates additional requirements that apply to those reports.

m. **Subrecipient monitoring.** Requires federal award recipients (pass-through entities) to have adequate monitoring and follow-up that covers entities to which they have in turn awarded federal funds.

n. **Special tests and provisions.** Includes other provisions for which federal agencies have determined that noncompliance could have a direct and material effect on the program.

Not all of the compliance requirements necessarily apply to a given program. To determine which requirements do apply, the grant agreement, United States Statutes, the United States Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), the OMB Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement and the *Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance* are sources that may be consulted.

The first place to look for these requirements is the grant document itself. Because all of these requirements are imposed by contract (as opposed to being a matter of law), all should be incorporated into the grant or contract either directly or by reference—so read the document first. Also, many grants or contracts, although quite brief, will refer to standard attachments that are incorporated by reference into every grant issued by a given agency.

OMB has issued a number of circulars that may be incorporated completely or partially by reference in
grants or contracts. Some of the more important circulars are as follows:

- A-110 — *Uniform Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Nonprofit Institutions*
- A-21 — *Cost Principles for Educational Institutions*
- A-122 — *Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations*

The first circular, A-110, includes many of the administrative requirements pertaining to federally funded programs. The last two—A-21 and A-122—establish the principles to be used in determining the costs of grants and contracts, including the basic principles of allowable and unallowable costs and the mechanics involved in establishing indirect cost rates.

Federal sponsors want to ensure that the limited financial assistance is spent appropriately by non-profit organizations. Over the past few years, the federal government has continued to change promulgated cost principles to stop perceived abuses by recipients of federal funds. In many instances, these changes have simply reduced the recipients’ ability to recover the cost of the program or research. While in the past the government was committed to full cost recovery by recipients of federal funds, the introduction of limitations on the amount of costs recovered has forced more organizations to increase their internal contributions to the programs.

Recent changes in audit documentation requirements may result in additional sample sizes for compliance testing during financial audits. Early conversations with auditors will minimize any surprises during the audit.

**American Recovery and Reinvestment Act (ARRA) Requirements**

ARRA created new funding opportunities for many charities and also created new reporting requirements for recipient organizations under section 1512 of the Act. An implementation guide was issued June 22, 2009 and can be located at: [http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2013-12-26/pdf/2013-30465.pdf](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2013-12-26/pdf/2013-30465.pdf)

On December 18, 2009, OMB issued a memorandum titled, *Updated Guidance on the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act – Data Quality, Non-Reporting Recipients, and Reporting of Job Estimates*. This guidance should be of particular interest to Catholic organizations that are recipients of federal assistance awards under the Recovery Act and required to report under Section 1512 of the Act.

Among the matters required to be reported by recipients under Section 1512 of the Recovery Act are estimates on the number of jobs created and retained. The OMB guidance focuses on this particular aspect of the 1512 reporting and incorporates lessons learned from the reporting period that ended September 30, 2009 (the first reporting period under the Recovery Act). It replaces Section 5 “Reporting on Jobs Creation Estimates by Recipients” of the OMB June 2009 guidance document titled, *Implementing Guidance for the Reports on Use of Funds Pursuant to the Recovery Act* and reflects important simplifications to the manner in which job estimates are calculated and reported. Specifically, the memorandum states that:

- Recipients will now report job estimates on a quarterly, rather than cumulative, basis. As a result, recipients will no longer be required to sum various data on hours worked across multiple quarters of data when calculating job estimates.
- Recipients will no longer be required to make a subjective judgment on whether jobs were created or retained as a result of the Recovery Act. Instead, recipients will report on jobs funded with
Recovery Act dollars.

- A simplified formula is provided to calculate job estimates and additional examples are included to assist in the understanding of how to apply the formula.
- Recipients should implement the updated methodology to the greatest extent possible for the January reporting period and that questions on the guidance should be directed to recovery@omb.eop.gov.

Related Regulatory and Professional Literature

Many of the publications referred to in this chapter are available on the Internet.
XII. Foundations and Endowments

Most (Arch)dioceses have fundraising and investment functions. These may be legally separate not-for-profit corporations ("foundation") or may be divisions operating within the Central Administrative Offices (CAO). The receipts of restricted gifts, including endowments, require specific accounting treatment.

Foundations

Please refer to FASB Codification Section 958-20-05, Financially Interrelated Entities of Not-For Profit Entities. In many cases a foundation may require consolidation, as discussed in Subtopic 958-810 of the Codification.

Classification of a beneficiary’s interest in the net assets of a financially interrelated fund-raising foundation in the beneficiary’s financial statements also is discussed in the AICPA’s Technical Practice Aids Section 6140.13 to 6140.18.

Endowments

Financial reporting standards for endowments generally are included in FASB Codification Sections 958-210-45 and 958-205-45. For a more thorough discussion of accounting for investment, please refer to Chapter XV Investments. Also, Chapter 8 of the AICPA Audit & Accounting Guide for Not-for-Profit Entities has an in-depth discussion of accounting for investments.

The model Uniform Prudent Management of Institutional Funds Act (UPMIFA) was approved by the Uniform Law Commission in July 2006 to modernize the Uniform Management of Institutional Funds Act of 1972 (UMIFA) for governing the investment and management of donor-restricted endowment funds by not-for-profit organizations. State legislatures may enact UPMIFA as written or a modified version of it, and they may issue supplementary guidance that affects the accounting for endowment funds. Classification of Donor Restricted Endowment Funds Subject to UPMIFA is discussed in Paragraphs 958-205-45-28 through 32 of the Codification. Classification of Donor Restricted Endowment Funds Subject to Trust Law or to UMIFA is discussed in Paragraph 958-205-45-33 through 958-205-45-35 of the Codification.

Spending Rate Policies

Many (Arch)dioceses manage their investments on a total return basis. Under the total return concept, the (Arch)dioceses focus on the overall return of their investments, including both investment income and net appreciation. A (Arch)diocese may adopt a specific spending-rate formula to calculate how much of that return will be used for current operations. A typical spending policy could be a percentage rate applied to the average three-year or twelve-quarter endowment balance. Some states that have enacted UPMIFA may have adopted a safe harbor spending rate, so it is important to comply with the state law where the (Arch)diocese is located. In making a determination to appropriate or accumulate endowment funds, UPMIFA requires the institution to act in good faith, with the care that an ordinarily prudent person in a like position would exercise under similar circumstances, and shall consider, if relevant, the following factors: (1) the duration and preservation of the endowment fund; (2) the purposes of the institution and the endowment fund; (3) general economic conditions; (4) the possible effect of inflation or deflation; (5) the expected total return from income and the appreciation of investments; (6) other resources of the institution; and (7) the investment policy of the institution.

Donor Advised Funds

For Donor Advised Funds, please refer to Chapter XIV Income Tax for a discussion of this topic.

Net Asset Classifications

Paragraph 958-210-45 of the FASB Codification provides guidance for the classification of net assets. The amounts for each of the three classes of net assets (permanently restricted, temporarily restricted, and unrestricted) are based on the existence or absence of donor-imposed restrictions. Chapter 11 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide for Not-for-Profit entities also provides guidance for net asset classifications.
XIII. Fundraising, (Arch)diocesan Appeals and Gift Acceptance

Canon 1262 – “The faithful are to give support to the Church by responding to appeals and according to the norms established by the Episcopal Conference”.

In accord with the prescripts of canon 1262 and effective as of August 15, 2007, the following norms (verbatim) were decreed to govern fundraising appeals to the faithful for Church support.

I. Norms:

Motivation

1. Fund-raising appeals are to be truthful and forthright, theologically sound, and should strive to motivate the faithful to a greater love of God and neighbor.

2. Fund-raising efforts are to be for defined needs.

3. The relationship of trust between donor and fund-raiser requires that
   a. Funds collected are used for their intended purposes;
   b. Funds collected are not absorbed by excessive fund-raising costs.

4. Donors are to be informed regarding the use of donated funds and assured that any restrictions on the use of the funds by the donor will be honored.

Competent Ecclesiastical Authority

5. Institutes of consecrated life and societies of apostolic life require approval of the respective competent major superiors and the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop to solicit funds; (Arch)diocesan entities require approval of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop to solicit funds; other Catholic entities and organizations require the approval of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop to solicit funds.

6. Approval for fund-raising by the competent authority is to be given in writing with reference to the purpose for which the funds are being raised, the time frame, and the methods to be used in raising them.

7. Oversight of fund-raising programs is to be maintained by competent authority through periodic review and, where necessary, appropriate sanction.

8. Competent major superiors of institutes of consecrated life and societies of apostolic life are to submit to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop of the place where the fund-raising originates periodic reports on the fund-raising programs and the apostolic activities they support.

Accountability

9. Fund-raisers are to provide regular reports to competent authority on the extent to which promises expressed or implied in the solicitation of funds have been fulfilled.
10. Fund-raising reports are to be prepared in scope and design to meet the particular concerns of those to whom the reports are due:
   a. The governing body and membership of the fund-raising organization;
   b. The competent authorities who approved and monitor the fund-raising effort;
   c. The donors to the organization;
   d. The beneficiaries of the funds raised.

11. Annual fund-raising reports are to provide both financial information and a review of the apostolic work for which the funds were raised. They are to set forth, at the least, the amount of money collected, the cost of conducting the fund-raising effort, and the amount and use of the funds disbursed.

**Procedures**

12. Funds beyond operating expenses are not to be accumulated or invested by a fund-raising office, but are to be turned over to the appropriate office for allocation and investment.

13. Special care is to be taken to see that ethical business relationships are maintained by the fund-raiser with suppliers of goods and services.

14. Contracts between a religious fund-raiser and commercial suppliers and consultants are to insure that control over materials, designs, money and general operations remain in the hands of the religious fund-raiser.

15. Agreements are not to be made which directly or indirectly base payment either to the commercial firm or to the religious fund-raiser on a percentage basis.

**Oversight**

16. Competent authority is to ensure that fund-raising organizations:
   a. Make available fund-raising reports to benefactors on a regular basis or upon reasonable request;
   b. Provide their governing bodies with an annual financial statement prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and, where size warrants, by a certified public accountant.

17. In response to formal complaints, competent authority is to promptly investigate charges, remedy abuses and, when necessary, terminate the fund-raising program.

[End of Norms]

**II. Guidance and Suggestions Concerning Canon 1262**

1. It is important to determine which entities (“Qualifying Entities”) within a (Arch)diocese are subject to canon 1262 (norm 5).
• (Arch)diocesan entities – juridic persons (parishes and seminaries) and other entities
• Public juridic persons and their apostolates.
• Institutes of Consecrated Life (religious orders of men or women and their related religious
  institute schools and retreat centers.
• Societies of Apostolic Life.
• Other Catholic entities, e.g. Catholic Schools, Opus Dei Apostolates, Religious Institute
  Schools, Catholic Cemeteries and Mortuaries, Retreat Centers and Catholic Foundations.

2. Ongoing oversight of fund-raising programs (norms 7 and 8) is required. The norms require
   periodic reports but do not define the meaning of “periodic”. This is left to the agreement between
   the qualifying entities and the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop. In making the periodic report on the
   programs, care must be taken to honor a donor’s request for confidentiality.

3. Implementation of canon 1262 should be done in close collaboration with a Judicial Vicar or
   Canonist of the (Arch)diocese.

4. Create a list of Qualifying Entities within the territory of the (Arch)diocese.
   • Utilizing the Official Catholic Directory listing or other official sources, determine what
     entities within the territory of the (Arch)diocese are Public Juridic Persons and their
     apostolates.
   • Research should include a review of the underlying canonical decrees for these entities
     within a (Arch)diocese.

5. Update the particular norms/laws and/or guidance of the local (Arch)diocese to address
   requirements of canon 1262. Each (Arch)diocese should set forth its own particular law in varying
   manners (e.g. policy and procedures manuals), which should include the parishes and other public
   juridic persons within the territory of each (Arch)diocese.

   The general principals of Canon 1262 do not reference materiality. Consideration should be
   given to establishing applicability or materiality thresholds for canon 1262 within the
   (Arch)diocese. For example, it is doubtful that to “solicit funds” includes events such as parish
   school raffles, auctions, candy sales, and festivals, whereas it certainly includes the solicitation
   of pledges payable over an extended period of time in order to finance significant expenditures
   representing acts of extraordinary administration.

6. Prepare a (Arch)diocesan notification letter to be sent to the administrator of those qualifying
   entities to notify them of the required norms of canon 1262 and how these norms will be
   implemented as particular law within the (Arch)diocese.

7. Consider a two-step process for fund-raising campaigns in order to obtain the (Arch)bishop’s
   written approval:
   • Phase I –Preliminary approval. This should be completed during the early stages of planning
     for the fund-raising campaign prior to commencement of a feasibility study or retention of a
     campaign consultant. Essentially, this initial request is to seek confirmation with the
     (Arch)bishop that the fund-raising concept makes sense prior to incurring substantial time,
     effort and dollars.
• Phase II – Formal approval. After feasibility and other planning work has been completed, including the approvals of the applicable entity’s Board, finance council and/or administrator have been received, a formal written request should be made to the (Arch)bishop requesting written approval. Such request should include the goals, methods and purpose of the fund-raising campaign as explicitly as possible.

8. The publication of annual fund-raising reports should be made available to all donors and beneficiaries of raised funds.

9. Periodic fund-raising reports should be supplied to the governing body (finance council, board of directors, board of trustees, etc.) concerning the status of the fund-raising.

10. Annually, the qualifying entity conducting a fund-raising campaign should provide to the Office of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop information updating the status of the campaign, the cost/benefits, problems/complaints, etc.

11. The due process procedures of the particular (Arch)diocese should be used to resolve disputes or conflicts arising between donors and organizations, in accord with the norms for due process.

(Arch)diocesan Appeals

Many (Arch)dioceses conduct annual appeals (also sometimes referred to as campaigns) to raise funds for specific programs, obligations or other special needs of the (Arch)diocese and/or its parishes and schools. The purpose of the appeal as represented in the appeal literature or other communications and other specific donor-imposed restrictions should determine the accounting and reporting practices for the funds received and to be received as a result of the appeal. This includes determinations as to whether the appeal funds are classified as Unrestricted, Temporarily Restricted or Permanently Restricted.

Unconditional promises to give should be recorded as pledges receivable in accordance with the requirements of FASB ASC Topic #958, Sub-topic #605, Not for Profit Revenue Recognition. Unless the donors have explicitly indicated that these funds be used for the current reporting period, the Pledges Receivable that are intended by the donor for use in a future period and are not permanently restricted should be reported as Temporarily Restricted Assets as they are subject to a time restriction. If the donors explicitly indicate that the Pledges Receivable are for the current reporting period and do not indicate any purpose restriction, they should be recorded as Unrestricted Assets.

With respect to other accounting and reporting requirements related to Pledges Receivable, generally accepted accounting principles require that: 1) an allowance for estimated uncollectible pledges be recorded and presented; 2) if the pledges are to be collected over a period of more than one year from the report date, both the receivable and any allowance for uncollectible pledges must be adjusted to net present value; and, 3) if the reporting entity is raising funds explicitly for another entity, those funds should be reported as an “agency transaction” in accordance with ASC 958-20, Not-for-Profit Entities, Financially Interrelated Entities and ASC 958-605-30, Not-for-Profit Entities, Revenue Recognition, Initial Measurement”.

Fundraising expenses may consist of direct and indirect expenses requiring allocation. SOP 98-2, Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and ASC 958-720-25-4, Not-for-Profit Entities, Other Expenses, Fundraising Expense Recognition, contains guidance for acceptable cost allocation methodologies.
Gift Acceptance Guidelines

Consistent with the precepts of Canon 1262 and other relevant Canons, it is important for a (Arch)diocese to carefully consider the need to establish guidelines for the proper handling of gifts to the Church. The primary purpose of such procedures is to preserve the donor’s charitable intentions and specifically the prescripts of Canon 1267§3, “Offerings given by the faithful for a specified purpose may only be used for that purpose.” While each (Arch)diocese would establish such guidelines through its own particular law, consideration should be given to incorporating the following general principles for all types of gifts:

1. All gifts should be properly accepted, including written acknowledgment and appropriate tax correspondence so that receipts are generated that fully comply with IRS regulations (see Chapter XIV).

2. Restricted Gifts – Acceptance of a restricted gift imposes an obligation to comply with the terms established by the donor. Therefore, it is necessary that the nature and extent of this obligation be clearly understood. If a gift is deemed unacceptable because of the restrictions the donor has placed on its use, the donor should be informed immediately and provided with the opportunity to remove and/or modify the identified restriction(s) or revoke the gift. Typically, only the Ordinary can refuse such gifts unless the (Arch)diocese’s particular law delegates such responsibility (Canon 1267§2).

3. Unacceptable Gifts – In addition, certain other gifts to the (Arch)diocese or parishes, whether restricted or not, may need to be refused or returned when the gift:
   - Is inappropriate or not conducive to the best interest of the mission or ministry of the (Arch)diocese or parish.
   - Is known or suspected to be from an illegal or questionable source.
   - Would obligate the parish or the (Arch)diocese to undertake responsibilities, financial or otherwise, which it may not be capable of meeting for the period required by the terms of the gift.
   - Creates excessive administrative, recording, tracking or reporting procedures for the (Arch)diocese or parish.
   - Creates a conflict of interest or could damage the reputation of the (Arch)diocese or parish.
   - Contains a perpetual condition (that is, no matter how enticing the gift may be, those gifts requiring conditions for greater than 20+ years, might often be refused, as such conditions could become very onerous). Should a condition be attached to a gift that is more specific than the basic mission of the entity and is of an extended duration, the gift should not be accepted unless it provides a mechanism for the (Arch)bishop to change the purpose.

Likewise, when receiving gifts in kind, gifts of securities, gifts of real estate, planned gifts and bequests and/or other types of gifts, it is important to understand that such gifts can result in complicated transactions that must be evaluated carefully to ensure that the (Arch)diocese and/or parish are not accepting potential or real liability upon acceptance (such as environmental liabilities associated with real estate). Detailed guidelines should be developed by the (Arch)diocese for each of these types of gifts, including how to value such gifts in order to properly record such contributions in accordance with generally accepted accounting
principles, and how to properly acknowledge these gifts for donors’ income tax purposes.
XIV. Income Tax

Please note that IRS regulations are being constantly updated and that this section is meant only as a general guide to issues. You should verify the current accuracy of any section before placing a final reliance on it.

USCCB Group Tax Exemption Ruling

Annually since 1946, the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) has issued to the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops, a group tax exemption ruling with respect to the Catholic organizations listed in The Official Catholic Directory (OCD) for a particular year ("Group Ruling"). The Group Ruling establishes (1) that organizations included in the OCD are exempt from federal income tax under section 501(c) (3) of the Code and from federal unemployment tax; and (2) that contributions to such organizations are deductible for federal income, gift, and estate tax purposes. The current Group Ruling is available on the USCCB website at www.usccb.org/ogc. At that website there is also a full explanation of what the Group Ruling provides as well as application forms for including newly formed organizations in the Group Ruling and OCD. Inclusion in the Group Ruling has no effect on an organization's liability for any federal excise taxes, nor does it automatically establish an organization's exemption from state or local income, sales, or property taxes.

Accounting Treatment

The accounting treatment for income taxes is specified in Accounting Standards Codification Topic 740 - Income Taxes.

Generally Accepted Accounting Principles require that entities disclose the effect of uncertainties in tax positions. This is a two-step process where first a determination is made whether or not benefit should be recognized. Second, if the recognition threshold is met, determine the amount of benefit. While this may not affect most (Arch)dioceses, they will need to document for their files that they have examined their tax positions, including non-profit status and whether they need to file forms 990, 990-N or 990-T. Because there are complex issues involved it will be helpful to involve outside experts including auditors in this examination.

The following is intended to provide general information about income tax issues (other than accounting treatment) to (Arch)dioceses in the United States.

Deductibility/Substantiation of Contributions

One of the primary benefits of section 501(c) (3) exemption is deductibility of contributions for federal income (§ 170), estate (§ 2055), and gift (§ 2522) tax purposes. Cash contributions by individuals to organizations listed in the OCD generally are deductible up to 50% of the donor's adjusted gross income [IRC § 170(b)(1)(A)], with a five-year carryover for any excess [IRC § 170(d)(1)]. Non-cash contributions can have different limitations. Corporate gifts are deductible up to 10% of taxable income [IRC §
In order to be deductible, a payment must first qualify as a gift, which is defined as a voluntary transfer of money or property without receipt of or expectation of a commensurate return benefit. Thus, for example, the payment of tuition, whether made directly to a school or to a church operating the school, is not deductible. In addition, payments made in various fundraising contexts may or may not be deductible, depending on whether goods or services are received in return. For example, payment for a purchase at a charity auction will be deductible only to the extent the payment exceeds the fair market value (FMV) of goods or services received in return. Payments for charity raffle tickets are not deductible, since the amount paid is not a gift, but rather payment for the chance to win whatever prize is being offered.

In response to abuses with respect to charitable contributions, in 1993 Congress enacted enhanced substantiation rules applicable to contributions of $250 or more. Section 170(f)(8) provides that no contribution of $250 or more will be deductible unless the donor obtains, prior to filing his or her tax return, written acknowledgment from the donee charity verifying the amount of the contribution and whether any goods or services were received in return. If so, such goods or services must be identified and must be valued by the donee charity. If the benefits received consist solely of intangible religious benefits, a statement to that effect must be included. Although the burden of requesting appropriate acknowledgment is placed on the donor and not imposed on the donee charity, charities that knowingly provide false written substantiation statements may be subject to penalties for aiding and abetting an understatement of tax liability under section 6701.

Beginning in 2007 donors must retain written documentation for all monetary donations in the form of a cancelled check, bank record or receipt from the donee organization showing the name of the donee organization, the date of the contribution and the amount of the contribution. This will make it important that donors use checks or contribution envelopes. This requirement is in addition to the section 170(f)(8) substantiation requirements noted above.

Certain payments are considered quid pro quo contributions—namely, they are made partly as a gift and partly in consideration for goods or services furnished to the donor. An exception is provided for payments made to an exclusively religious organization in return for which the donor receives solely intangible religious benefits. Under section 6115, charitable organizations must inform donors in writing that quid pro quo contributions in excess of $75 are deductible only to the extent that they exceed the value of any goods or services provided by the charitable organization in return, and the organizations must provide a good-faith estimate of the value of such goods or services. This disclosure must be made either at the time of solicitation or upon receipt of the quid pro quo contribution. Penalties are imposed on any charity that fails to make appropriate disclosure under section 6115 at $10 per contribution, capped at $5,000 per particular fundraising event or mailing. Typical quid pro quo contribution situations include charity golf tournaments, auctions, dinner dances, and so forth, where part of the payment constitutes a contribution. In such situations, the disclosure statement may be placed in solicitation materials, in event programs or brochures, or on the face of event tickets—i.e., in any reasonable manner likely to come to the attention of the donor.

Additional substantiation requirements are imposed with respect to certain contributions. Most non-cash contributions require that the donor receive a receipt from the charitable organization showing the name of the charitable organization, the date and location of the contribution and a reasonable description of the
item(s) donated. Items dropped off at collection boxes and valued at less than $250 do not require a receipt however the items donated must be in “good condition”, with no guidance provided on what constitutes “good condition”. Contributors of non-cash gifts valued at $500 or more must complete Form 8283 and attach it to Form 1040. Contributors of non-cash gifts valued at $5,000 or more (other than gifts of publicly traded securities) must

- Obtain a qualified appraisal and submit an appraisal summary with the Form 8283 attached to Form 1040, and
- Have the donee charity complete and return to the donor the "Donee Acknowledgment Section" (in doing so, the donee charity is not vouching for the appraised value).

The donee charity is required to report to the IRS on Form 8282 if such contributions are subsequently sold or otherwise disposed of within three years of receipt.

The IRS has issued special rules for the claiming of deductions for donated vehicles. In general, the deduction will be limited to the actual sales price the charity receives for the vehicle. Donors may claim a deduction for the fair market value under the following circumstances:

- The charity makes a significant intervening use of the vehicle, such as using it to deliver meals on wheels.
- The charity makes a material improvement to the vehicle, i.e., major repairs that significantly increase its value and not mere painting or cleaning.
- The charity donates or sells the vehicle to a needy individual at a significantly below-market price, if the transfer furthers the charitable purpose of helping a poor person in need of a means of transportation.

Sales of donated vehicles are reported to the IRS and to donors on form 1098 C. Copy A must be filed with the IRS. Copies B and C must be furnished to the donor (for donor’s records and for attachment to his or her tax return) not later than 30 days after the date of sale if box 4a is checked, or 30 days after the date of the contribution if box 5a or 5b is checked. Form 1098-C is available on the IRS website at www.irs.gov under Forms and Publications.

Finally, (Arch)diocesan entities often benefit from contributed services. A parishioner may volunteer to clean the church every week, or a carpenter may replace the windows and only charge for materials. These acts of charity are welcomed, and often the volunteer asks for a tax receipt for the contributed services. While it is permissible to write a letter thanking the volunteer for donating his or her time, it is not permissible to give the volunteer a tax receipt or include the value of services on the volunteer’s annual contribution statement. The value of contributed services is not deductible. The donor may deduct his or her unreimbursed out of pocket expenditures.

Lobbying Activities

Section 501(c) (3) organizations may not engage in more than insubstantial lobbying activities. Lobbying includes contacting, or urging the public to contact, members of a legislative body for the purposes of proposing, supporting, or opposing legislation or advocating adoption or rejection of legislation [Treas. Reg. § 1.5019(c)(3)–1(c)(3)(ii)]. Legislation includes any action by Congress, by a state or local legislative body, or by the public in a referendum, initiative, constitutional amendment, or similar procedure [Treas.
Reg. § 1.501(c)(3)–1(c)(3)(ii)]. No distinction is made between "good" and "bad" legislative activity. (See Rev. Rul. 67-293, 1967-2 C.B. 185.)

The IRS has never defined "insubstantial" in this context or identified a percentage safe harbor for legislative activities. Court cases suggest a 5 to 15% range, but the IRS comfort zone is at the lower end. See Murray Seasongood v. Commissioner (227 F.2d 907 (6th Cir. 1955)), which ruled that less than 5% time and effort is not substantial; and Haswell v. U.S. (500 F.2d 1133 (Ct. Cl. 1974), cert. denied, 419 U.S. 1107 (1975)), which ruled that 16 to 17% of a budget was substantial. A more specific elective lobbying standard was enacted in 1976 as section 501(h) of the Code. Churches, conventions of churches, and integrated auxiliaries at their own request were made ineligible [IRC §§ 501(h)(5) and 4911(f)(2)].

Political Activities

A section 501(c)(3) organization may not engage in any political campaign activity. Unlike the lobbying limitation, this is an absolute prohibition. The statute states that 501(c)(3) organizations may not "participate in, or intervene in (including the publishing or distributing of statements), any political campaign on behalf of (or in opposition to) any candidate for public office.” The prohibition applies only to candidates for elective public office. The IRS has indicated that it will be paying special attention to so called “issue advocacy” materials distributed by churches, focusing on both the content and the manner of distribution. They have also indicated that they will scrutinize links provided on website to determine if there is inappropriate advocacy of candidates.

Although very little additional interpretation is provided in the regulations, the penalties for violating the prohibition are severe. In addition to loss of tax-exempt status and deductibility of contributions, two-tiered excise taxes may be imposed on the exempt organization (10% and 100%) and on the organization manager (2-1/2% and 50%) for political expenditures (IRC § 4955). In flagrant cases, the IRS may seek an injunction against further political expenditures (IRC § 7409[a]) and immediate determination and assessment of income and excise taxes (IRC § 6852). For more information, check the OGC website, www.usccb.org/ogc.

Donor Advised Funds

Section 1231 of the Pension Protection Act of 2006 (the “Act”) added new Code section 4966, which includes for the first time a definition of the term “donor advised fund”: A fund or account that (1) is separately identified by reference to contributions of a donor(s); (2) is owned and controlled by a sponsoring organization; and (3) with respect to which a donor (or his appointee or designee) has, or reasonably expects to have, advisory privileges with respect to the distribution or investment of amounts held in the fund/account by reason of the donor’s status as donor. All three criteria must be satisfied in order for a fund or account to be classified as a donor advised fund.

The following funds or accounts are not classified as donor advised funds: (1) a fund or account that makes distributions only to a single identified organization or governmental entity; or (2) a fund or account with respect to which the advisor (including donor, appointee and designee) advises as to the recipients of grants for travel, study or similar purpose if (i) the advisory privileges are performed exclusively as a member of a committee appointed by the sponsoring organization, (ii) no combination of advisors (or related parties) directly or indirectly control the committee, and (iii) all grants are awarded on an objective and
nondiscriminatory basis under procedures that are approved in advance by the sponsoring organization’s board of directors and are designed to meet the requirements of section 4945(g)(1), (2) and (3).

A “sponsoring organization” is defined as any organization that is described in section 170(c) (other than a government entity and without regard to the requirement to be created or organized in the U.S.), is not a private foundation, and maintains one or more donor advised funds.

The most likely candidates for holding donor advised funds are “foundations” or endowment funds of (Arch)dioceses, parishes, schools, hospitals and other (Arch)diocesan organizations. If a (Arch)diocesan organization maintains donor advised funds, however, it may need to make changes in terms of operations, including relationships with donors/advisors, fund distributions, investments, reporting, and donor acknowledgments.

**Excess Benefit Transactions - Intermediate Sanctions**

In 1996, Congress enacted section 4958 of the Internal Revenue Code, the so-called "intermediate sanctions" provisions, which were designed to provide the IRS with a sanction other than revocation of exemption for non-fair market value transactions with insiders, defined in section 4958 as "excess benefit" transactions. Section 4958 applies to transactions occurring on or after September 14, 1995 (with the exception of transactions pursuant to certain binding written contracts in effect before that date). In 1998, proposed regulations were issued to provide interpretive guidance under section 4958. Public hearings were held in March 1999. In January 2001, the IRS issued temporary regulations; and in January 2002, the IRS issued final regulations. Some of the major provisions of the final regulations are summarized below.

**Applicable Tax-Exempt Organizations**

Section 4958 applies to any organization that, without regard to any excess benefit, would be described in section 501(c)(3) or (c)(4) and exempt from tax under section 501(a) (EO, or "exempt organization"), at any time during a five-year period ending on the date of the excess benefit transaction ("lookback period"). An organization is described in section 501(c)(3) for purposes of section 4958 only if it provides notice under section 508 (filing Form 1023), unless it is otherwise described in section 501(c)(3) and is specifically excluded from application of section 508. Accordingly, churches, their integrated auxiliaries, and conventions and associations of churches-which are statutorily excepted from section 508-are nonetheless subject to section 4958.

**Excise Taxes Imposed**

Section 4958 imposes excise taxes on any excess benefit resulting from an excess benefit transaction between the EO and a disqualified person (DP). Significantly, these taxes are not imposed on the organization. Rather, the DP is liable for a 25% first-tier tax, and for a 200% second-tier tax, if the excess benefit transaction is not corrected within the correction period. In addition, a tax equal to 10% of the excess benefit (up to a maximum tax of $20,000) is imposed on an organization manager (OM) who knowingly participates in an excess benefit transaction, unless participation was not willful and was due to reasonable cause. An OM will not be liable for tax if he or she opposed the transaction. If more than one person is liable for tax under section 4958, all such persons are jointly and severally liable.

"Disqualified Person" Defined
Section 4958 defines a "disqualified person" as any person who was in a position to exercise substantial influence over the affairs of the organization at any time during a five-year lookback period ending with the date of the transaction. The term also encompasses certain members of the DP's family and certain 35%-controlled entities.

**Persons Having Substantial Influence.** The final regulations state that individuals holding any of the following powers, responsibilities, or interests are in a position to exercise substantial influence over the affairs of an EO: (1) voting members of the governing body; (2) individuals who, regardless of title, have ultimate responsibility for implementing the decisions of the governing body or for supervising the management, administration, or operation of an EO (persons serving as president, chief executive officer, or chief operating officer have such responsibility unless they demonstrate otherwise); and (3) individuals who, regardless of title, have ultimate responsibility for managing the finances of an EO (persons serving as treasurer or chief financial officer have such responsibility unless they demonstrate otherwise).

**Persons Deemed Not to Have Substantial Influence.** The final regulations state that the following are deemed not to have substantial influence over the affairs of an EO: (1) organizations exempt under section 501(c)(3); (2) certain section 501(c)(4) organizations; and (3) employees receiving direct or indirect economic benefits of less than the "highly compensated employee" amount in section 414(q)(1)(B)(i) ($120,000 for 2015), who are not otherwise classified as DPs by virtue of position, family relationship, or substantial contribution. In all other cases, whether an individual is a DP depends on all relevant facts and circumstances. The final regulations clarify that an organization can be a DP.

"Organization Manager" Defined
An "organization manager" is defined as any officer, director, or trustee of an EO, or any individual having similar powers with respect to the EO, regardless of title. An officer includes an individual who (1) is so designated in organizational documents, or (2) "regularly exercises general authority to make administrative or policy decisions on behalf of the organization." The final regulations provide that independent contractors, acting solely in their capacity as attorneys, accountants, or investment managers/advisors, are not officers. In addition, individuals who are not officers, directors, or trustees, but who serve on a committee of an EO's governing body that is attempting to invoke the rebuttable presumption of reasonableness (discussed below) based on the committee's actions, are considered OMs for purposes of section 4958.

"Excess Benefit Transaction" Defined
The final regulations define an "excess benefit" as the amount by which the value of the economic benefit provided by an EO directly or indirectly to or for the use of any DP exceeds the value of the consideration (including the performance of services) received by the EO for providing such benefit. With certain exceptions explained below, all consideration and benefits exchanged between a DP and an EO (including any controlled entities) must be taken into account in order to determine whether an excess benefit transaction has occurred. The final regulations provide that, in determining the reasonableness of compensation that is paid (or vests, etc.) in one year, services performed in prior years may be taken into account.

Rebuttable Presumption of Reasonableness: Consistent with the legislative history of section 4958, the final regulations establish a rebuttable presumption whereby compensation paid by an EO to a DP, or the transfer
of property or other benefit between the EO and a DP, will be presumed to be at FMV, provided three conditions are satisfied: (1) the compensation or terms of transfer are approved in advance by the organization's governing body (or a committee of the governing body) composed entirely of individuals who do not have a conflict of interest with respect to the arrangement or transaction; (2) the governing body or committee obtained and relied upon appropriate data as to comparability prior to making its determination; and (3) the governing body or committee adequately and concurrently documented the basis for its determination. The IRS may rebut the presumption only if it develops sufficient contrary evidence to rebut the probative value of the comparability data relied upon by the governing body or committee.

Certain Economic Benefits Disregarded. All fringe benefits that are excluded from income under section 132 (except certain liability insurance premiums, payments, or reimbursements) are disregarded for purposes of section 4958. The final regulations also disregard expense reimbursements paid under an accountable reimbursement plan that meets the requirements of section 1.62-1(c). Thus, as is the case with section 132(d) on working condition fringe benefits, the existing standards under section 162 and 274 will apply to determine whether employee expense reimbursements are disregarded or should be treated as part of a DP's compensation for purposes of determining reasonableness under section 4958.

Written Contemporaneous Substantiation. An EO must provide written substantiation that is contemporaneous with the transfer of benefits at issue in order to provide clear and convincing evidence of its intent to treat benefits provided to a DP as compensation for services. To satisfy this requirement, either (1) the EO must report the economic benefit as compensation on an original or amended federal tax return with respect to the payment, e.g., Form W-2 or 1099, filed prior to commencement of an IRS examination; or (2) the DP must report the benefit on his or her original or amended federal tax return, e.g., Form 1040, also filed prior to commencement of an IRS examination.

If a benefit is not reported on a return filed with the IRS, other written contemporaneous evidence, e.g., employment contract, may be used to demonstrate that the appropriate decision making body or an authorized officer approved a transfer as compensation for services in accord with established procedures. The final regulations clarify that the term "established procedures" refers to the EO's usual practice for approving compensation and does not require that an EO have a formal written procedure for approving compensation.

Correction. An excess benefit transaction is corrected by undoing the excess benefit to the extent possible and by taking any additional measures necessary to place the EO in a financial position not worse than that in which it would be if the DP were dealing under the highest fiduciary standards. The correction amount equals the sum of the excess benefit and the interest thereon. Generally, a DP corrects an excess benefit by making a payment in cash or cash equivalents (not a promissory note) to the EO equal to the correction amount. However, with the agreement of the EO, the DP may make correction by returning specific property previously transferred in the excess benefit transaction. The DP will be treated as making a payment equal to the lesser of the following: either the property's FMV determined on the date the property is returned or the FMV determined on the date the excess benefit transaction occurred. If such payment is not equal to the correction amount, the DP must make additional cash payment to the EO in the amount of the difference. If the DP makes payment of less than the full correction amount, the 200% tax is imposed only on the unpaid portion.
The final regulations clarify the rules governing correction when an EO no longer exists or is no longer tax-exempt by requiring that another section 501(c)(3) organization receiving the correction amount be a publicly supported charity that has been in existence as such for a continuous period of at least sixty calendar months ending on the correction date. This time-in-existence requirement is designed to prevent a DP from creating a new EO to receive the correction amount. The final regulations also require that the organization receiving the correction amount not allow the DP to make or recommend any grants or distributions by the organization. Finally, the DP may not also be a DP with respect to the organization receiving the correction amount.

Special Rule for Churches

The final regulations provide that the church audit procedures under section 7611 of the Internal Revenue Code will be used in initiating and conducting any IRS inquiry or examination into whether an excess benefit transaction has occurred between a church and a DP. The reasonable belief required to initiate a church tax inquiry will be satisfied if there is a reasonable belief that taxes under section 4958 are due from a DP with respect to a transaction involving a church.

Embezzlement

Any economic benefit received by a DP (who by definition has substantial influence) from the assets of an EO is considered to be provided by the EO, even if the transfer of the benefit was not authorized under the regular procedures of the organization. The practical result of this rule is that funds embezzled by a DP generally constitute excess benefit transactions. The final regulations clarify that in no event will an economic benefit that a DP obtains by theft or fraud be treated as consideration for the performance of services.

Substantive Exemption Requirements Still Apply

The final regulations verify that section 4958 does not affect the substantive requirements for exemption under sections 501(c)(3) or (4), including the requirements that the EO be organized and operated exclusively for exempt purposes and that no part of the net earnings inure to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual. Thus, regardless of whether a transaction is subject to excise taxes under section 4958, existing exemption principles and rules apply (e.g., a transaction that is not subject to section 4958 because of the initial contract exception may still jeopardize the EO's exempt status). The preamble to the temporary regulations indicated that the IRS would exercise its administrative discretion in enforcing sections 4958, 501(c)(3), and 501(c)(4) in accordance with the direction provided in the legislative history, and would publish guidance concerning factors it will consider with respect to revocation of exemption in excess benefit transaction situations. Until such time, the IRS will consider all facts and circumstances in the administration of section 4958. (See Final Regulations on Excise Taxes on Excess Benefit Transactions, 67 Fed. Reg. 3076 [January 23, 2002].)

Automatic Excess Benefits

An economic benefit may not be treated as consideration for the performance of services (and therefore looked at together with other reasonable compensation for services) unless the church has clearly indicated its intent to treat the benefit as compensation when the benefit is paid. In determining intent the relevant
factors include whether (1) the appropriate decision making body has approved the transaction as compensation in accordance with its procedures or (2) the church has provided written substantiation (such as inclusion of the benefit as taxable wages on Form W-2 or other IRS return or form) that is contemporaneous with the transfer of the economic benefit at issue. Failure to provide this documentation would cause the provision of such benefit to be outside the realm of reasonable compensation for services and thereby considered a transfer of assets/benefit without a return benefit to the church. Such automatic excess benefits are subject to the penalties outlined above and include perquisites such as companion travel, personal services, housing and similar benefits not otherwise excluded from taxable wages under the Code or as a properly substantiated and qualified expense reimbursement.

Filing Requirements for Form 990

All organizations included in the Official Catholic Directory (OCD) must file Form 990, Return of an Organization Exempt from Income Tax, unless they are eligible for a mandatory or discretionary exemption to this filing requirement. There is no automatic exemption from the Form 990 filing requirement simply because an organization is included in the Group Ruling or listed in the OCD. Organizations required to file Form 990 must do so by the 15th day of the fifth month after the close of their fiscal year. Among the organizations not required to file Form 990 under section 6033 of the Code are: (i) churches and interchurch organizations of local units of a church; (ii) integrated auxiliaries (including a men's or women's organization, a youth group, a religious school, and a mission society), and conventions or associations of churches; (iii) the exclusively religious activities of religious orders; (iv) schools below college level affiliated with a church or religious order; (v) organizations with gross receipts normally not in excess of $50,000 (but see below for requirements to file Form 990-EZ or 990-N); and (vi) certain church-affiliate organizations that finance, fund or manage church assets, or maintain church retirement insurance programs, and organizations controlled by religious orders that finance, fund or manage assets used for exclusively religious purposes. (Arch)diocesan entities not covered by the above exemptions are required to file Form 990, Form 990-EZ if gross receipts are less than $200,000 and total assets are less than $500,000, or 990-N if annual revenues are less than $50,000.

Special Rules for Section 509(a)(3) Supporting Organizations. The Pension Protection Act of 2006 eliminated discretionary exceptions to the Form 990 filing requirement as applied to section 509(a)(3) supporting organizations. The discretionary exceptions likely to be affected by this provision are exceptions (v) and (vi) above. This means that if an organization exempt under the Group Ruling is classified as a section 509(a)(3) supporting organization, it may no longer rely on exceptions (v) or (vi) above as the basis for not filing Form 990. However a section 509(a)(3) supporting organization that qualifies as an integrated auxiliary of a church under section 6033 may continue to rely on that exception as a basis for not filing Form 990. Because it is a statutory exception, the integrated auxiliary of the church exception was not affected by the Pension Protection Act. Beginning in calendar year 2014, an organization classified as a section 509(a)(3) supporting organization that is required to file Form 990 or 990-EZ, will now be required to demonstrate in detail on Schedule A how it meets the supporting organization classification.

Form 990-N Filing Requirements. Under the Pension Protection Act of 2006, an organization exempt under the Group Ruling that claims exception (v) above (gross receipts normally not in excess of $50,000) as its sole basis for not filing Form 990 must file annual electronic Form 990N (“e-postcard”) as required by IRS,
setting forth the following information: (1) the legal name of the organization; (2) any name under which the organization operates or does business; (3) the Organization’s mailing address and Internet website address; (4) the organization’s EIN; (5) the name and address of a principal officer; (6) evidence of the organization’s continued qualification for exemption from the Form 990 filing requirement; and (7) notification of termination, if applicable. Form 990-N must be submitted electronically through the IRS website on or before the 15th day of the fifth calendar month following the close of the fiscal year for which it is filed.

Public disclosure and Inspection. Any organization that is required to file either Form 990, Form 990-EZ, or Form 990-N must upon request make a copy of the form and its schedules and attachments (other than Form 990 contributor lists) available for public inspection during regular business hours at the organization’s principal office and at any regional or district offices having three or more employees. Form 990, Form 990-EZ, or Form 990-N for a particular year must be made available for a three year period beginning with the due date of the return. In addition, any organization that files Form 990, Form 990-EZ, or Form 990-N must comply with written or in-person requests for copies of the form. The organization may impose no fees other than a reasonable fee to cover copying and mailing costs. If requested, copies of the forms for the past three years must be provided. In-person requests must be satisfied on the same day. Written requests must be satisfied within 30 days.

Public Disclosure of Form 990-T. Under the Pension Protection Act of 2006, Form 990-T, Exempt Organization Unrelated Business Income Tax Return, is subject to the same public inspection and copying rules that apply to Forms 990, 990-EZ, and 990-N, except that only attachments to the form that relate to the imposition of tax must be disclosed.

Revocation for Failure to File. Under the Pension Protection Act of 2006, the tax-exempt status of an organization, including an organization exempt under the Group Ruling, that is required to file either Form 990, Form 990-EZ, or Form 990-N but that fails to do so for three consecutive years will be considered revoked. Reapplication to IRS (not through the Group Ruling process) will be required in order to reinstate exemption.

Because the requirements for filing Forms 990, 990-EZ, 990-N and 990-T are complicated and the questions with regard to financial governance need to be answered in a uniform manner, it is suggested that all 990 forms be reviewed centrally at the (Arch)diocesan level prior to being filed.

Filing Requirements for Form 5578

Rev. Proc. 75-50, 1975-2 C.B. 587, sets forth notice, publication, and record keeping requirements regarding racially nondiscriminatory policies that must be complied with by private schools, including church-related schools, as a condition of establishing and maintaining exempt status under section 501(c)(3) of the Code. Under Rev. Proc. 75-50, private schools are required to file an annual certification of racial nondiscrimination with the IRS. For private schools not required to file Form 990, the annual certification must be filed on Form 5578, Annual Certification of Racial Nondiscrimination for a Private School Exempt from Federal Income Tax. Form 5578 must be filed by the fifteenth day of the fifth month following the close of the fiscal year. Form 5578 may be filed individually by school or by the (Arch)diocese on behalf of all its (Arch)diocesan schools.
Filing Requirement for Foreign Investments

All organizations that have investments in offshore funds are also subject to various informational filings, with failure to file penalties of $10,000 per form or greater. The forms required depend on the type of investment and the percentage of ownership of such investment, but include Forms 926, 8865, 8621 and 5471. The investments can be directly held through a domestic limited partnership, or held by a U.S. investment advisor on your behalf. The requirement to file is triggered by transferring cash of $100,000 or any amount of non-cash asset in a rolling 12 month period or a change in, or actual ownership of, 10% or more of the investment vehicle or similar thresholds. Foreign financial accounts with a value that exceeds $10,000 at any time during the year must also file a Report of Foreign Bank and Financial Accounts.

Unrelated Business Income Tax (UBIT)

Although organizations included in the Group Ruling are exempt from federal income tax, they are subject to tax on the income from any unrelated trade or business in which they regularly engage. Unrelated business income is governed by sections 511-514 of the Internal Revenue Code. UBIT is imposed at the normal corporate rates. A Form 990-T must be filed if an organization has gross income from unrelated trade or business of $1,000 or more, regardless of whether tax is due or whether the organization is required to file Form 990. The Form 990-T must be filed no later than the fifteenth day of the fifth month after the close of the organization's tax year (IRC § 6072[e]). If taxes are owed, organizations are expected to file quarterly estimated income tax returns.

An "unrelated trade or business" is as follows: (1) a trade or business as defined under section 162 of the Code (generally, any activity carried on for the production of income from the sale of goods or the performance of services); (2) one that is regularly carried on; and (3) one that is not substantially related to an organization's exempt purposes. The IRS applies a "fragmentation rule" to classify different aspects of what might otherwise appear to be a unitary business endeavor as being either related or unrelated. For example, the sale of advertising in an otherwise exempt educational periodical is considered a trade or business, which will generally be unrelated to its exempt purposes. This provision will apply to most (Arch)diocesan newspapers that accept paid advertising.

To be considered "regularly carried on," a trade or business must exhibit "frequency and continuity" and be carried on in a manner similar to its commercial counterpart [Treas. Reg. § 1.513-1(c)(1)]. In order to qualify as "related," IRS requires a substantial causal relationship between the activity and an organization's exempt purposes [Treas. Reg. § 1.513-1(d)(2)]. The fact that an organization uses funds derived from its unrelated business activity in order to further its exempt programs does not convert an unrelated activity into a related one. Further, even if an activity relates to exempt purposes, it may be carried on to an extent greater than necessary to achieve those purposes. In such situations, income derived from excess activity will be subject to unrelated business income tax.

There are a number of exceptions to the UBIT rules, including the following:

**Volunteer Exception.** This exception applies when substantially all of the work in a particular activity is performed by volunteers [IRC § 513(a)(1)]. The IRS's standard for "substantially all" is 85%. This exception typically applies to activities like church raffle, bingo games, and other fundraisers, although many such activities could also avoid being characterized as subject to UBIT because they are not regularly carried on.
Convenience Exception. This exception applies to any trade or business carried on primarily for the convenience of its members, students, patients, officers, or employees [IRC § 513(a)(2)]. Classic examples of this exception include the hospital pharmacy sales made to patients, the sale of books by a university bookstore to students, sales in hospital gift shops, and laundry and vending operations provided for student use.

Donated Merchandise and Low Cost Item Exceptions. The donated merchandise exception applies to the sale of merchandise that has been received as a contribution or gift [IRC § 513(a)(3)]. This exception applies to thrift stores operated by churches and other charitable organizations. The Code also contains an exception for the distribution of low-cost items incident to charitable solicitations. If a church mails unrequested, low-cost items as part of a fundraising effort, the church is not liable for UBIT on the income received [IRC § 513(h)(1)(A)]. The dollar amount is indexed for inflation and changes each year.

Mailing List Exception. Section 513(h)(1)(B) of the Code provides that income from the rental or exchange of mailing lists between or among section 501(c)(3) organizations is not subject to UBIT. The IRS has taken the position that rentals or exchanges with non-501(c)(3) organizations is subject to UBIT. However, after a string of litigation losses, the IRS will agree that properly structured licensing agreements for the use of mailing lists can generate non-taxable royalty income (see below).

Bingo and Gambling Activities Exception. An important UBIT exception for many churches and related entities is the bingo exception, which applies to bingo games where participants place wagers, winners are determined, and prizes are distributed in the presence of all persons placing wagers in the game [IRS § 513(f)]. The bingo exception does not apply to scratch-off bingo cards, bingo machines or to other forms of "walk-away" games. In addition, there are various IRS reporting and withholding requirements related to awards from these activities. See IRS publication 3079, “Tax Exempt Organizations and Gaming.”

Miscellaneous Exceptions. There are also UBIT exceptions for qualified convention and trade show activities conducted by section 501(c)(3), (c)(4), (c)(5), and (c)(6) organizations, and for certain services, including data processing, food services, and laboratory services provided at cost to hospitals with one hundred or fewer beds [IRC §§ 513(d), (e)]

In addition to the above exceptions to the definition of unrelated trade or business, the Code provides certain modifications to the computation of UBI, primarily for passive income sources. Thus, although unrelated, income from certain sources will be excluded from the computation of unrelated business income. The major modification categories under section 512(b) include dividends, interest, annuities, rents, and royalties.

Royalties. A "royalty" is a payment for the use of a valuable intangible property right, e.g., use of an exempt organization's name and logo. Payments for services provided by the organization are not considered royalties [Rev. Rul. 81-178, 1981 C.B. 135]. Royalties are not included in the computation of unrelated business income [IRC § 512(b)(2)]. The scope of the royalty exception has been unclear for the past several years, particularly in the context of affinity credit card and similar arrangements. However, after a string of litigation losses, IRS determined in late 1999 to stop litigating affinity card and mailing list rental cases except where the factual record clearly established that the exempt organization was providing more than incidental services in exchange for payments received. Thus, income from an exempt organization's licensing of the use of its name,
logo, mailing lists, or other valuable intangible property rights will generally be treated as nontaxable royalty income, provided that no more than incidental services—i.e., those inherent in and necessary to the nature of the arrangement—are provided in return.

**Rents from Real Property.** Rents from real property are not subject to UBIT under section 512(b)(3) of the Code. Rents from personal property rented with real property may also be exempt provided that the rent attributable to personal property is no more than 10% of the total. If 10 to 50% of the rent is attributable to the rental of personal property, then a pro rata share of the rental income will be subject to UBIT. However, if more than 50% of the rent is attributable to personal property, then the modification is lost and the entire rental amount will be taxed.

Further, an exempt organization may not provide services in connection with the rental of real property, with the exception of services customary in connection with the rental of space: such as light, heat, trash collection, and cleaning of common areas. This issue of services often arises in the context of retreat houses and parking lots. For example, if an exempt organization rents its parking lot to a third party, which is responsible for all aspects of its operation, the income is considered the rental of real property not subject to UBIT. If, on the other hand, a church rents certain spaces in its parking lot during the week for use by nearby business people, these rents will generally be subject to UBIT. They do not qualify for the rental of real property exception because the church remains responsible for lot maintenance, snow removal, signs, barriers, security, line painting, etc. [See, e.g., PLR 9301024 (October 15, 1992).] In the retreat house situation, frequently church organizations rent excess capacity in their facilities for business retreats, wedding receptions, and the like. Because a full range of services is typically provided in such situations, including maid service, food service, etc., it is not considered the rental of real property, but rather is more analogous to hotel operations.

**Sales or Exchanges.** Under Section 512(b)(5), all gains or losses from the sale, exchange, or other disposition of property is excluded from the computation of UBIT, with the exception of stock in trade or other property that would be classified as inventory, and property held primarily for sale to customers in the ordinary course of business.

There are two major exceptions to the exclusions from UBIT under section 512(b) outlined above that render income taxable despite the section 512(b) modifications:

1. **Debt-Financed Income.** Under the provisions of section 514 of the Code, income that would otherwise be excluded from taxation under section 512(b)(1), (2), (3), and (5) (i.e., dividends, interest, royalties, rents and certain gains and losses from the sale of property) may nonetheless be subject to UBIT if it is subject to acquisition indebtedness—i.e., was acquired or improved with borrowed funds. Unrelated debt-financed income from such property is taxable in proportion to its acquisition indebtedness.

2. Certain exceptions to the debt-financed income rules are relevant to church property. First, where substantially all (at least 85%) of the property's use is substantially related (aside from the need for funds) to the organization's exempt purposes, it is not treated as debt-financed property [IRC § 514(b)(1)(A)]. Second, where property is owned by one exempt organization and is used by certain related organizations, it is not treated as debt-financed property to the extent that the property is used by either organization in furtherance of its exempt purposes [IRC § 514(b)(2)].
3. Third, under the “neighborhood land rule” exception, if an organization acquires real property and
intends to convert it to use for exempt purposes within ten years, the property will not be treated as
debt-financed property if it is in the neighborhood of other property used by the organization for
exempt purposes and if the intent to use the property for exempt purposes within ten years is not
abandoned [IRC § 514(b)(3)(A)]. Note, however, that section 514(b)(3)(C)(i) vitiates the
neighborhood land rule exception with respect to any structure on the land, when it is acquired, that
is not required to be removed or demolished as part of the conversion. Special consideration is
given to churches and conventions or associations of churches. Among other things, a fifteen-year
period applies instead of the regular ten-year period, and the requirement that the acquired land be
in the neighborhood of other property used for exempt purposes is eliminated [IRC § 514(b)(3)(E)].

a. Controlled Subsidiary Exception. Section 512(b)(13), which was significantly revised in
1997, provides that specified payments such as rent, royalty, annuity, and interest income,
which is generally excluded from unrelated business taxable income, are not so excluded
if it is received from a controlled subsidiary of a tax-exempt organization. Under section
512(b)(13) prior to 1997, a controlled subsidiary was defined as 80% controlled by the tax-
exempt parent organization. The control test did not incorporate any indirect ownership
rules, so that rents, royalties, annuities, and interest from second-tier subsidiaries generally
did not constitute unrelated business taxable income to the tax-exempt parent organization.
In an attempt to thwart tax-exempt organizations’ attempts to elude UBIT on amounts
received from subsidiary organizations, Congress lowered the threshold for "control" from
80% to the current 50%. With respect to stock subsidiaries, "control" means ownership by
vote or value of more than 50% of the stock. For partnerships or other entities, "control"
means ownership of more than 50% of the profits, capital, or beneficial interests. In
addition, the constructive ownership rules of section 318 of the Code were made applicable
to section 512(b)(13). As a result, a tax-exempt parent organization will be considered to
control a subsidiary in which it holds, directly or indirectly, more than 50% of the voting
power or value. Any rent, royalty, annuity, or interest received by an exempt organization
from its controlled entity will be unrelated business taxable income to the extent that the
payment reduces the net unrelated income or increases the net unrelated loss of the
controlled entity.

b. There are currently two exceptions that would allow a tax-exempt organization to receive
specified payments from controlled subsidiaries free from UBIT. The first exception is if
the controlled subsidiary carries out an activity that would further the exempt purpose of
the tax-exempt parent organization, then the specified payments would not be subject to
UBIT by the tax-exempt parent. The second exception comes from the Pension Protection
Act of 2006 which allowed for qualifying specified payments that meet the Section 482
arm’s length transfer standards to be excluded from UBTI treatment. A qualifying
specified payment is any specified payment made under a contract that was in force as of
August 16, 2006, or a contract that is a renewal under substantially similar terms as those
entered into under a prior contract in force as of August 17, 2006. Any amount in excess
of an arm’s length amount would be subject to UBIT. The second exception is currently
subject to extension each calendar year by Congress. The exception has currently been
extended to January 1, 2015. With the uncertainty of the extension, it is suggested that a tax advisor be consulted to verify if it is still applicable.

**Corporate Sponsorship Regulations**

The Taxpayer Relief Act of 1997 amended the Internal Revenue Code to add section 513(i), which provides that the receipt of qualified sponsorship payments by an exempt organization subject to tax imposed under section 511 of the Code does not constitute receipt of income from an unrelated trade or business. Section 513(i) applies to payments solicited or received after December 31, 1997. In March 2000, the IRS issued proposed regulations interpreting section 513(i). The IRS has issued final regulations under section 513(i), which are effective as of April 25, 2002, and are applicable for payments solicited or received after December 31, 1997.

**Applicability**

The final qualified sponsorship payment regulations apply to the following: single events conducted by an exempt organization (e.g., a bowl game, TV show, or walkathon); a series of events (e.g., an athletic tournament or concert series); or an activity conducted over a period of time (e.g., an art exhibit). It is irrelevant whether the sponsored event is substantially related to the exempt organization's tax-exempt purpose. The qualified sponsorship provisions do not apply to payments made in connection with exempt organization trade shows [governed by section 1.513-3 of the regulations] or to income derived from the sale of advertising or acknowledgements in exempt organization periodicals [governed by section 1.512(a)-1(f)]. A "periodical" is defined as "regularly scheduled and printed material published by or on behalf of the exempt organization that is not related to and primarily distributed in connection with a specific event conducted by the exempt organization." The final regulations clarify that printed material includes material that is published electronically.

**Qualified Sponsorship Payments**

The final regulations define a "qualified sponsorship payment" as a payment made by any person engaged in a trade or business for which there is no expectation or arrangement that the payer (or persons designated by the payer) will receive any substantial return benefit from the exempt organization. "Payment" means the payment of money, transfer of property, or performance of services.

**Substantial Return Benefit**

Substantial return benefit is defined as any benefit other than (1) a use or acknowledgment or (2) certain disregarded benefits. With respect to the latter, the final regulations delete the $79 cap (the 2002 inflation-adjusted figure) found in the proposed regulations, so that benefits may be disregarded if the aggregate fair market value of all benefits provided to the payer (or persons designated by the payer) is not more than 2% of the payment. If the aggregate fair market value of the benefits exceeds 2%, then (except to the extent that the benefit constitutes an acknowledgment) the entire fair market value of such benefits, not merely the excess amount, is a substantial return benefit. Benefits to the payer (or persons designated by the payer) may include the following: advertising; exclusive provider arrangements; goods, facilities, services, or other privileges; and exclusive or non-exclusive rights to use an intangible asset (trademark, patent, logo, etc.) of the exempt organization.
Use or Acknowledgment

For purposes of section 513(i), a substantial return benefit does not include the use or acknowledgment of the name, logo, or product line of the payer's trade or business. Use or acknowledgment does not include advertising but may include the following: exclusive sponsorship arrangements; logos and slogans that do not contain qualitative or comparative descriptions of the payer's products, services, facilities, or company; a list of the payer's locations, telephone numbers, or Internet address; a value-neutral description, including displays or visual depictions, of the payer's product line or services; and the payer's brand or trade names and product or service listings. Logos or slogans that are an established part of the payer's identity are not considered to contain qualitative or comparative descriptions.

Advertising

For purposes of section 513(i), "advertising" means any message or other programming material that is broadcast or otherwise transmitted, published, displayed, or distributed, and that promotes or markets any trade, business, service, facility, or product. Advertising includes messages containing the following: qualitative or comparative language; price information or other indications of savings or value; an endorsement; or an inducement to purchase, sell, or use any company, service, facility, or product. Mere display or distribution—whether for free or for a charge—of a payer's product to the general public at the sponsored activity is not considered an inducement to purchase, sell, or use the product. A single message with both advertising content and an acknowledgment is advertising. These provisions do not apply to activities a payer undertakes on its own (e.g., the purchase of broadcast time from a television station during commercial breaks in a sponsored program).

Exclusivity Arrangements

The final regulations adopt the distinction between an "exclusive sponsor" and an "exclusive provider" that was delineated in the proposed regulations. An arrangement that acknowledges a company as the exclusive sponsor (or the exclusive sponsor representing a particular business or industry) of an exempt organization activity does not, by itself, constitute a substantial return benefit. However, if the arrangement is an exclusive provider arrangement that limits the sale, distribution, availability, or use of competing products in connection with the sponsored activity, the payer has received a substantial return benefit.

Allocation of Payments

The final regulations adopt a reasonable allocation rule. If an arrangement provides that a payer will receive substantial return benefit, only the portion, if any, of the payment that exceeds the FMV of the return benefit is a qualified sponsorship payment. The burden of establishing valuation is on the exempt organization. The final regulations clarify that the fair market value of the substantial return benefit generally is to be determined when the benefit is provided. However, if the parties enter into a binding, written sponsorship contract, the fair market value of any substantial return benefit provided pursuant to that contract is to be determined on the date the parties enter into the sponsorship contract (except in the case of material changes).
Contingent Payments

The amount of a qualified sponsorship payment may not be contingent, by contract or otherwise, on attendance at the exempt organization's event, on broadcast ratings, or on other indications of public exposure that would be typical of advertising. A qualified sponsorship payment may, however, be contingent on the sponsored activity's actually taking place.

Public Support Determinations. Qualified corporate sponsorship payments in the form of money or property (but not services) will be considered as contributions for purposes of the public support tests of sections 170(b)(1)(A)(vi) and 509(a)(2) of the Code. However, this "contribution" classification with respect to the exempt organization does not determine whether the corporate sponsorship payment is deductible by the payer under section 162 as a business expense or under section 170 as a charitable contribution.

Written Agreements. The final regulations maintain that neither the existence nor the detail of a written sponsorship agreement, by itself, disqualifies payment from classification as a qualified sponsorship payment.

Sponsor Hyperlinks. For purposes of section 513(i), the final regulations address the issue of whether a hyperlink constitutes an acknowledgment or advertising in two new examples. In Example 11, a symphony orchestra maintains a website with information about its performance schedule. A music shop makes a payment to fund a concert series. The symphony posts a list of sponsors on its website, including the music shop's name and Internet address, which appears as a hyperlink from the symphony's website to the music shop's website. The symphony's website does not promote or advertise the music shop. The entire payment by the music shop is a qualified sponsorship payment. The posting of its Internet address as a hyperlink does not constitute advertising.

In Example 12, a health-based charity sponsors a year-long program to educate the public about a particular medical condition. A drug company that produces a drug used in treating the condition provides funding for the program to help the charity produce educational materials and post information on its website, which contains a hyperlink to the drug company's website. The drug company's website contains an endorsement by the charity of its drug, which was reviewed and approved in advance by the charity. The endorsement is advertising, the fair market value of which exceeds 2% of the total payment from the drug company to the charity. Thus, only the portion of the payment, if any, in excess of the fair market value of the advertising can be classified as a qualified sponsorship payment.

The preamble to the final regulations cautions that these two examples deal with hyperlinks in the section 513(i) context only and should not be relied upon with respect to the treatment of hyperlinks for purposes of other sections of the Code.

Safe Harbor Application. The final regulations reiterate that the UBIT treatment of any payment or portion thereof that does meet the requirements for the qualified sponsorship payment safe harbor will be determined by application of the ordinary UBIT rules under sections 512, 513, and 514.

Caveat

The general information provided herein is not a substitute for specific legal advice. You should contact your (Arch)diocesan tax/legal counsel for advice concerning the application of the tax law to particular fact situations.
XV. Investments

All institutions with investments should develop written investment policies governing significant investment criteria for each class of funds being invested. Among the matters which should be included in the investment policy are the following:

- Investment objective – A statement addressing the time horizon of the investment or fund, the use of sound investment practices that emphasize time horizon and the overall expectation of return on investment.
- Responsibilities of the Investment Committee – Membership: number and appointment authority. To serve as faithful stewards in safeguarding the assets of the (Arch)diocese: with respect to those assets of the (Arch)diocese, with respect to those assets deposited by participating institutions. Also, to make changes in the investment policy and fund design, and to implement the approved policy, guidelines and objectives.
- Responsibilities of the Investment Managers – To manage the funds in a manner consistent with the investment objectives, guidelines and constraints outlined in the investment policy and in accordance with State and Federal law. This includes fiduciary responsibilities, security selection/asset allocation, and proxy voting.
- Risk tolerance – Financial ability to accept risk within the investment program and extent of willingness to accept return volatility.
- Asset allocation – Setting the minimum and maximum amount of each asset class, (e.g. fixed income, stocks, cash, cash equivalents and other investment categories) that the institution may hold; the establishment of rebalancing procedures and tactical asset allocation; and diversification (core, value, growth, etc.).
- Investment strategy – criteria for investment manager selection.
- Expected investment return – Usually this will be expressed as a comparison to a specified benchmark or as a percentage above a standard such as the consumer price index and will include a time frame over which the return will be measured, usually a period of several years. Periodic investment manager performance evaluations should be part of this process.
- Quality ratings – minimum quality ratings acceptable for investments. This is particularly applicable to fixed income investments but can also apply to the minimum market capitalization necessary for investing in the stock of publicly traded companies.
- Prohibited investments – specific investments or categories of investments that will not be held by the institution.
- Socially responsible guidelines – guidelines for a socially responsible investment policy should be developed and should be modeled on the guidelines published on the website of the USCCB.

Other matters that should be considered in preparing any written investment policy or guidelines include:

1. The purposes and the priorities for investing the funds,
2. liquidity needs of the funds,
3. investment style preferences, and
4. regulatory requirements such as ERISA.

Institutions increasingly make use of alternative investments such as hedge funds, private equity funds, real estate funds, venture capital funds, etc. to increase both yield and diversification of investments. Prior to investing in such alternatives, institutions should investigate if there will be problems with valuation,
unrelated business income taxes, etc. They also should be aware that it may be difficult to determine if Social Responsibility guidelines are being observed by alternative investment funds.

The AICPA has published a Practice Aid entitled “Alternative Investments – Audit Considerations” that explores many of the issues with regard to alternative investments. It may also be a good idea to consult with outside auditors prior to utilizing alternative investment vehicles.

The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) has issued pronouncements concerning fair value measurements that apply to accounting for investments. This guidance is contained in FASB Codification Section 820, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, and is effective for years beginning after November 15, 2008.

In developing the Fair Value Statement, the FASB recognized there are different definitions of fair value in generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and little guidance for applying those definitions.

The Statement defines fair value, establishes a framework for measuring fair value under GAAP, and expands disclosures about fair value measurements. Where applicable, the Statement simplifies and codifies related guidance within GAAP.

The Statement does not expand the use of fair value measurements but increases the consistency and comparability of fair value measurements. It retains the exchange price notion of fair value and clarifies that the exchange price is the price in an orderly transaction between market participants. The expanded disclosures focus on the inputs used to measure fair value and for recurring fair value measurements using significant unobservable inputs. To increase consistency and comparability in fair value measurements and relate disclosures, the Statement establishes a fair value hierarchy, which prioritizes into three broad levels the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value. The fair value hierarchy gives the highest priority to quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities (Level 1) and the lowest priority to unobservable inputs (Level 3). Level 2 inputs are inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable, either directly or indirectly.

The Statement also encourages entities to combine the fair value information disclosed under the Statement with the fair value information disclosed under other accounting pronouncements.
XVI. Property and Equipment

Recognition of Fixed Assets

Fixed assets are property, plant, and equipment that typically consist of long-lived tangible assets that are not expected to be sold or consumed in less than one year. Common fixed assets include, but are not limited to: land, buildings, machinery (boilers, organs, etc.) and furniture and fixtures (desks, chairs, etc.). Every (Arch)diocese should establish a fixed asset policy to determine which expenditures should be capitalized and which expenditures should be expensed. Capitalized fixed assets should be recorded to the balance sheet and depreciated throughout the expected useful life of the asset. Expenditures that are not capitalized should be recognized as an expense on the income statement during the period the expenditure is incurred.

The fixed asset policy should state a reasonable minimum amount for an expenditure to be classified as a fixed asset. For example, a fixed asset policy states that any equipment less than a specified dollar amount should be expensed. In this instance if the total cost to replace a boiler in a rectory is less than the minimum amount the (Arch)diocese should expense the total cost. Conversely, if the replacement cost of the boiler was more than the minimum the boiler would be capitalized. The (Arch)diocese should also note in the fixed asset policy that items purchased individually may fall below the minimum but exceed the minimum when purchased in aggregate. For example, a desk would fall below the minimum threshold. However, if the (Arch)diocese purchased 75 desks at a certain price per unit at the same time the total expended would exceed the minimum and should be capitalized as a fixed asset. Care should be taken to write off any remaining book value on an asset that is replaced.

The fixed asset policy should address the difference between repairs & maintenance and capital improvements. Repairs and maintenance to existing structures or equipment should only be capitalized if the expenditure extends the expected useful life of the asset. For example, a repair to a small section of a church roof exceeds the minimum capitalization threshold but does not extend the useful life of the asset. In this instance, the repair should be expensed in the year in which the expenditure is incurred. Conversely, if a complete new roof is installed it would extend the useful life of the structure and the costs to replace the roof should be capitalized.

Depreciation is the recognition of the cost of the fixed asset on the income statement spread over the expected useful life of the asset. The (Arch)diocese’s fixed asset policy should establish a consistent, systematic depreciation methodology. For expediency, the fixed asset policy may state general guidelines for the expected useful life on equipment. Depreciation expense should be recorded opposite an “accumulated depreciation” contra account on the balance sheet. There are several types of depreciation methods that can be used by a (Arch)diocese, but typically, not-for-profit organizations depreciate assets on a straight-line basis over its useful life. Straight line depreciation is calculated by the total acquisition cost of the asset, less salvage value, dividend by the expected useful life. For example, the depreciation expense for a new vehicle purchased for $5000 with no expected salvage value and a 5 year expected useful life would be $1,000 per year.

The (Arch)diocese should start depreciation when the fixed asset is available and ready for use. This is particularly relevant for significant construction projects that may take several years. Costs related to construction should be capitalized when incurred but not depreciated until the asset is available and ready to be used. The criterion to start depreciation, however, does not necessarily mean a project is full
completed. For example, construction of a new parish center has been ongoing for two years. The hall portion of the center is ready and available for use but the library and classroom portions are still under construction. In this instance the costs related to the construction of the hall should be depreciated in the current year. The costs incurred for the library and classroom portions of the building should be depreciated when those parts of the project are available and ready for use.

All fixed assets, except land and property held for sale, should be depreciated in accordance with the (Arch)diocese’s fixed asset policy. Property classified as held for sale should be recorded at the lower of its carrying amount or fair value less cost to sell (FASB Codification 360-10-55-43) and should only be classified as held for sale when the criteria outlined in FASB Codification 360-10-45-9 have been met.

Organizations that have not capitalized fixed assets previously should do so retroactively. If historical costs are not available for assets already in service, another reasonable basis can be used to value such assets. Other bases might be cost-based appraisals, insurance appraisals, replacement cost values, or property tax appraisals adjusted for market value. An alternative basis should be used only if historical cost information is unavailable and only to establish the initial value at the date of recording. Subsequent purchases should be recorded at cost and donated assets at market value.

Any fixed asset, purchased or donated, greater than or equal to the minimum capitalization amount, should be categorized as a fixed asset and depreciated over its useful life. If a purchased or donated fixed asset is less than the minimum amount, it should be expensed in the period obtained rather than capitalized.

**Carrying Value of Fixed Assets**

Generally, fixed assets should be carried at the acquisition cost less accumulated depreciation. A (Arch)diocese, however, is required to recognize an impairment loss if the carrying value of the fixed asset is no longer recoverable. For example, if a building is completely destroyed by a fire the (Arch)diocese should write off the carrying value of the structure and record an impairment loss in the year in which the loss occurs in accordance with FASB Codification 605-40-25-3. If the (Arch)diocese rebuilds the structure the costs incurred to do so should be capitalized.

Many (Arch)dioceses purchase property in advance for future growth and development. Care should be taken periodically to review and inventory such properties to determine the future suitability for needs within the (Arch)diocese. Property so purchased and held should be carried at cost value with any necessary adjustment for retirements as required by FASB Codification Subtopic 958-360. Consideration of the possibility of property taxes being charged to the (Arch)diocese should be given to any unoccupied properties. Despite the tax exempt status of the (Arch)diocese some towns and municipalities may charge property taxes on unoccupied properties.

Property acquired by contribution should be carried at fair value at the date of contribution, in accordance with FASB Codification 958-605-25-2. Should the future use of the property change, the continuing value of the property should be reviewed. Property held that no longer meets its original intended use should be written down to the lower of its cost or net realizable value. Likewise, facilities that are closed and no longer serve their intended purpose should be considered for proper valuation in accordance with FASB Codification Section 958-360-35 and Section 360-10-35.
Net Asset Classification

Fixed assets may represent a significant dollar amount in the total assets of a (Arch)diocese. These assets do not reflect the same liquidity and values as do other more current assets. To differentiate the relative values of net assets held by a (Arch)diocese, consideration should be given to a separate net asset classification for fixed assets on the balance sheet. Within the category of unrestricted net assets (what might have been more commonly called "fund balances" in the past), "Net Investment in Property and Equipment" could be further designated. This further distinguishes the amount of net assets that may be less liquid in the financial statement of the (Arch)diocese.

Not-for-profit organizations may receive contributions of long-lived assets (such as property and equipment) or of cash and other assets restricted to the purchase of long-lived assets, for which donors have not expressly stipulated how or for how long the long-lived asset must be used by the organization or how to use any proceeds resulting from the assets’ dispositions. Although not required, an organization may adopt an accounting policy of implying time restrictions on the use of such contributed assets that expire over the assets’ expected useful lives. If an organization adopts such a policy, the contributions received should be reported as restricted support that increases temporarily restricted net assets. Depreciation should be recorded over the assets’ useful lives, and net assets should be reclassified from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when (a) the asset is placed in service or (b) as depreciation is recognized over the asset’s useful life.

Alternatively, organizations may adopt a policy of not implying time restrictions on contributions of long-lived assets (or of other assets restricted to the purchase of long-lived assets) received without donor stipulations about how long the contributed assets must be used. If an organization adopts such a policy, contributions of long-lived assets with no donor-imposed time restrictions should be reported as unrestricted support. Contributions of cash and other assets restricted to the acquisition of long-lived assets should be reported as restricted support that increases temporarily restricted net assets; those restrictions expire when the long-lived assets are placed in service by the organization. A (Arch)diocese should refer to current tax law for guidance concerning holding periods for donated fixed assets to assure that the donor’s tax deduction for the gift is not jeopardized. A (Arch)diocese should also refer to its gift acceptance policy with respect to donations of long-lived assets.

Oversight of Fixed Assets

Property should be classified as to its use, and management responsibilities should likewise be classified by use. Property of parishes and schools should be placed under the oversight of the individuals in charge of such institutions, and the requirements of Canon 1283, 2° and 1283, 3° should be considered when there is a change in administrators. Canon 1283, 2° and Canon 1283, 3° call for an inventory to be made as administrators begin their function and for a copy of the inventory to be preserved at the location and for a copy to be sent to the archives of the curia. Typically, a pastor or principal will be in charge of property maintenance at a related facility. Recognizing the specialized skills needed to care for fixed assets, they may rely on the support and assistance of committees and volunteers to help maintain, advise, and coordinate these activities.

Careful consideration should be given to the development/improvement of existing real estate for future needs within the (Arch)diocese. Improvements to land should be considered along with the long-term nature of these assets and their expected long-term use.
A number of procedures should be followed to carefully institute and exercise oversight and stewardship responsibilities for fixed asset holdings. The first procedure is a complete inventory of fixed assets. This inventory should include the following:

- A complete legal description of each real estate parcel and related buildings and improvements
- A description of buildings and improvements on each real estate parcel and a detailed picture or drawing of such
- A description of the use of the property
- A description of the form of ownership of the property
- A description of any mortgages or encumbrances related to the property
- An identification of each parcel's property manager, if applicable

Other procedures should be established to provide for the physical safeguard of assets from theft, vandalism, or unauthorized disposition.

Procedures likewise should be established to provide for the ongoing maintenance of facilities. Maintenance should consist of both daily and routine activities, while a plan should be established for long-term improvements, such as roof replacement and major maintenance. Institutional budgets should include a capital budget as well as an operational budget. The capital budget should consider necessary long-term repairs and improvements to the facilities to keep them safe and operational.

Procedures should be established to ensure that adequate insurance is maintained to minimize liability with respect to use of facilities. Insurance coverage should be reviewed on an annual basis. Periodic insurance appraisals should be obtained to ensure that property insurance coverage is adequate.

**Alienation and Acts of Ordinary and Extraordinary Administration**

Certain acts relating to temporal goods are more significant than others and require a more elaborate system of authorization. The *Code of Canon Law* clearly distinguishes acts of *administration* (whether ordinary or extraordinary) from acts of *alienation* of property, whereby a juridic person divests itself of all or part of its stable patrimony.

To place acts of ordinary administration of greater importance, a (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop, for validity, must first hear the finance council and college of consultors. A (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop's acts of extraordinary administration, as defined by the USCCB, require, for validity, the consent of the finance council and college of consultors. No permissions from outside the (Arch)diocese are required for acts of ordinary or extraordinary administration.

Canon 1277 reads as follows:

The (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop must hear the finance council and college of consultants to place acts of administration that are more important in light of the economic condition of the (Arch)diocese. In addition to the cases specially expressed in universal law or the charter of a foundation, however, he needs the consent of the finance council and of the college of consultants to place acts of extraordinary administration. It is for the conference of (Arch)bishops to define which acts are to be considered of extraordinary administration.¹
To place acts of extraordinary administration, as defined in the statutes of public juridic persons other than the (Arch)diocese, administrators require, for validity, the consent of the Ordinary (see c. 1281).

Canons 1291 and 1292, §§ 1, 2, and 3, deal with the validity of acts of alienation. In cases involving alienation of stable patrimony, permission from the Holy See might be required, depending on the value of the property to be alienated.

Canon 1291 reads as follows:

The permission of the authority competent according to the norm of law is required for the valid alienation of goods which constitute by legitimate designation the stable patrimony of a public juridic person and whose value exceeds the sum defined by law. ¹

A commentary on alienation reads as follows:

Since alienation is the transfer of ownership, there is no alienation if no transfer of ownership takes place. Mortgaging property is not an act of alienation. A mortgage gives rise to rights in regard to property, and creates the potential of a future loss of ownership in the event of default in payments on the loan for which the mortgage serves as collateral, but there is no immediate transfer of ownership and, hence, no alienation. The same is true of assuming a mortgage when purchasing property which already has a mortgage on it. Granting a right of way or an easement to come across or otherwise use one’s land, since it does not involve a transfer of ownership, is not an act of alienation. (If the easement also includes the right to remove minerals, timber, or other natural resources from the land, then, of course, the easement would entail alienation of such resources.) Nor is leasing, or granting an option to purchase one’s property, or borrowing or loaning sums of money with or without collateral, or refusing a gift. ²

Canon 1292, § 1, reads as follows:

Without prejudice to the prescript of Can. 638, § 3, when the value of the goods whose alienation is proposed falls within the minimum and maximum amounts to be defined by the conference of bishops for its own region, the competent authority is determined by the statutes of juridic persons if they are not subject to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop; otherwise, the competent authority is the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop with the consent of the finance council, the college of consultors and those concerned. The (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop himself also needs their consent to alienate the goods of the (Arch)diocese. ¹

In March 2010, the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops promulgated the proscribed amounts in accord with canon 1292, § 1:

The maximum limit for alienation and any transaction which, according to the norm of law, can worsen the patrimonial condition is $7,500,000 for (Arch)dioceses with Catholic populations of half a million persons or more. For other (Arch)dioceses, the maximum limit is $ 3,500,000 (cf. can. 1295). ¹
1. The minimum limit for alienation and any transaction that, according to the norm of law, can worsen the patrimonial condition is $750,000 for (Arch)dioceses with Catholic populations of half a million persons or more. For other (Arch)dioceses, the minimum limit is $250,000.\textsuperscript{1}

2. For the alienation of property of other public juridic persons subject to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)Bishop, the maximum limit is $5,000,000 and the minimum limit is $25,000 or 5% of the prior year’s ordinary annual income, whichever is higher.\textsuperscript{1}

An accompanying memorandum from the USCCB President notes that “The approved sums are modestly lower than those that [were previously] in force. They are also no longer subject to an annual adjustment according to the Consumer Price Index.”

There have been further updates since December 1, 2011 to the proscribed amounts promulgated by the USCCB for Canon 1292, § 1. Canon 1292 § 2 and § 3 read as follows:

The permission of the Holy See is also required for the valid alienation of goods whose value exceeds the maximum amount, goods given to the Church by vow, or goods precious for artistic or historical reasons. (c. 1292 § 2).\textsuperscript{1}

If the asset to be alienated is divisible, the parts already alienated must be mentioned when seeking permission for the alienation; otherwise, the permission is invalid. (c. 1292 § 3). Canons 1292, § 4; 1293; and 1294 prescribe conditions for the liceity of acts of alienation, as follows:

Those who by advice or consent must take part in alienating goods are not to offer advice or consent unless they have first been thoroughly informed both of the economic state of the juridic person whose goods are proposed for alienation and of previous alienations (c. 1292, § 4).\textsuperscript{1}

The alienation of goods whose value exceeds the defined minimum amount also requires the following:

1° A just cause, such as urgent necessity, evident advantage, piety, charity, or some other grave pastoral reason. (c. 1293, § 1).\textsuperscript{1}

2° A written appraisal by experts of the asset to be alienated (c. 1293, § 1).\textsuperscript{1}

Other precautions prescribed by legitimate authority are also to be observed to avoid harm to the Church (c. 1293, § 2).\textsuperscript{1}

An asset ordinarily must not be alienated for a price less than that indicated in the appraisal (c. 1294, § 1).\textsuperscript{1}

The money received from the alienation is either to be invested carefully for the advantage of the Church or to be expended prudently according to the purposes of the alienation (c. 1294, § 2).\textsuperscript{1}

As a result of canon 1295, the procedures for alienation must be applied not only to transactions where the stable patrimony of a public juridic person is alienated, but also to those transactions
where the overall economic condition of a public juridic person is jeopardized or placed at risk.

The application of canon 1295 is contingent on the level of risk and on the economic condition of the public juridic person. The canon deals with such matters as the transfer of rights such as easements, mortgages, liens, and options as well as with incurring debt, including guarantees, surety and gift annuities, and the making of unsecured loans. The canon encompasses accepting an obligation, giving up a right, assuming a debt, or being responsible for the liability of another.


**Leasing**

Canon 1297, in part, reads as follows:

> Attentive to local circumstances, it is for the conference bishops to establish norms for the leasing of Church goods, especially regarding permission to be obtained from the competent ecclesiastical authority (c. 1297).

Effective August 15, 2007, the following USCCB Complimentary Norms for Canon 1297 became effective:

1. Prior to leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by a (Arch)diocese, the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop must hear the finance council and the college of consultors, when the market value of the goods to be leased exceeds $400,000.

2. Prior to leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by a (Arch)diocese, the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop must obtain the consent of the finance council and the college of consultors when the market value of the property to be leased exceeds $1,000,000 or the lease is to be for three years or longer.

3. The valid leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by a parish or other public juridic person subject to the governance of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop requires consent of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop when the market value of the goods to be leased exceeds $100,000 or the lease is to be for one year or longer.

4. The valid leasing of ecclesiastical goods owned by a pontifical institute of consecrated life or society of apostolic life requires, in addition to the consent of the competent major superior and council, the *nihil obstat* of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop when the market value of the property to be leased exceeds $1,000,000 or the lease is to be for three years or longer.

5. The valid leasing of ecclesiastical goods by any public juridic person requires the consent of the Holy See when the market value of the goods exceeds $5,000,000.
Guidance and Suggestions Concerning Canon 1297

Key Concept – Canon 1297 applies when a (Arch)diocese, a parish or any other qualifying entity within the territory of the (Arch)diocese is the lessor, i.e., they lease their property to another entity. Accordingly, this decree does apply to situations when a (Arch)diocese, parish or other qualifying entity enters into a lease transaction whereby they are the lessee.

1. Determination of which entities within the (Arch)diocese does canon 1297 apply to is important.
   a. Parishes and other public juridic persons (norms 1, 2, 3 and 5).
   b. Pontifical Institutes of Consecrated Life or Society of Apostolic Life (norm 4).

2. Market value should be established by obtaining a qualified appraisal of the property to be leased.
   a. Various commentaries addressing the implementation of canon 1297 have suggested that market value can be obtained by (i) obtaining the tax value of the property adjusted if the tax value is based on a percentage of the actual market value or, (ii) the depreciated value of the property as given in the latest financial audit. The APC does not recommend these approaches. Consideration will need to be given for special situations, including:
      - Leases may involve only a portion of a facility creating valuation difficulties.
      - Leases may include both real and personal property (Artworks, etc.) requiring additional appraisal experts.

3. Suggested guidance for (Arch)diocesan Finance Officers:
   a. Implementation of canon 1297 should be done in close collaboration with Judicial Vicar or Canonist of the (Arch)diocese.
   b. Create a list of those “qualifying entities” within the territory of the (Arch)diocese. Utilizing the Official Catholic Directory listing or other sources, determine what entities are:
      - Parishes and other public juridic persons
      - Pontifical Institutes of Consecrated Life
      - Societies of Apostolic Life
   c. Update the particular norms/laws and/or guidance of the local (Arch)diocese to address requirements of canon 1297. While each (Arch)diocese sets forth its own particular law in varying manners (e.g. policy and procedure manuals), such policies include the parishes and other juridic persons within the territory of each (Arch)diocese.
   d. Consideration should be given to establishing materiality levels for canon 1297 when obtaining fair value appraisals. For example, how many “expert opinions” are needed and what, if any, are the requirements for such “experts” (e.g. for transactions <$100,000, between $100,000 $5.0M and > $5.0M).
   e. In addition, each (Arch)diocese must determine what constitutes a lease. For instance, it is doubtful that a parish making a facility available for wedding receptions or other Catholic group meetings falls under those norms. In these situations, a license agreement with proper insurance coverage is most appropriate.
f. Prepare a (Arch)diocesan notification letter to be sent to the administrator of those qualifying entities to notify them of the required norms of canon 1297 and how these norms will be implemented as particular law of the (Arch)diocese.

Notes


XVII. Records Retention

Introduction

A records management and retention policy is an important component of the administration of each (Arch)diocese. Records are important for sacramental purposes, day-to-day management and administration, when needed for litigation, efficient management of space, etc. Each (Arch)diocese should review and comply with the retention requirements applicable to that particular jurisdiction and the nature of the (Arch)diocese’s documents.

Many (Arch)dioceses have developed and implemented such policies after careful thought, analysis and consultation with legal counsel. It is recommended that (Arch)dioceses that do not have such a policy consult with those that do, particularly in the same province or state. The formulation of a compliant, practical policy should be done in collaboration with (Arch)diocesan legal and canonical counsel, the Vicar General, CFO, Chancellor and Archivist.

Definition of Records

Records retention policies should include paper records and electronic files, data and e-mails. Such records would likely be included in the following categories:

a. Administrative
b. Personnel
c. Financial
d. Legal
e. Property
f. Cemetery
g. Publications
h. Sacramental

Within each group, records could be categorized into the respective appropriate retention periods. Records older than the retention period should be destroyed. Those of permanent value should be stored appropriately.

Confidential records should be made available only to (Arch)diocesan /parish representatives with a legitimate right to know, unless their disclosure is compelled by some legal action.

A comprehensive records retention policy should include the following:

1. Complete listing of all types of records and their retention periods.
2. Documentation to be used in storing, including indexing, labeling, pre-determined destruction dates, inventorying, etc.
3. Internal controls over retrieval, returns and destruction, along with appropriate documentation standards.
4. A process and calendar for updating records into and out of storage and destruction at least annually.
5. Security over stored records.

6. Training and education of all staff on the entire policy and the actual processes. Particular attention should be given to appropriate retention and deletion policies and practices for emails, recorded voice mails, etc. as electronic media, technology and related state and federal laws continue to evolve.

7. If an external shredding service is used for the destruction of records no longer needed, it will often be prudent for the archivist to bring the documents to the shredding service and to witness the actual destruction.

A sample policy from a large (Arch)diocese is included herein for reference purposes. Please consult local counsel when developing a records retention policy.
SAMPLE POLICY – Consult with Legal Counsel

Note: this records management and retention policy is provided only as an example. Please consult your local (Arch)diocesan canon lawyer and civil legal counsel when developing a records retention policy for your (Arch)diocese.

Sample 1 of 9

Record Management and Retention Policy and Schedule Roman Catholic (Arch)diocese of XXXX [date]

1. Definition of records: The word “records” used in this policy refers to all recorded information, documents, letters, maps, books, photographs, films, sound recordings, tapes (magnetic and otherwise), electronic data processing records, emails sent and received, recorded voice mails, electronic data banks and other documentary material created, received, maintained or preserved by any department or employee of the (Arch)diocese of XXXX in the course of transaction of business or ministry or in pursuit of its legal obligations.

2. Ownership of records: All records as defined above and created or preserved by a department, ministry or employee of the (Arch)diocese of XXXX in the course of employment or in the transaction of (Arch)diocesan business are solely the property of the (Arch)diocese.

3. Conservation of records: No records shall be removed, destroyed, transferred, stored, transferred into other media or otherwise disposed of except in compliance with (Arch)diocesan policies.

4. Retention periods: Retention periods in this policy are absolute, except when legally halted by official notice. They are not minimum guidelines. There are no exceptions.

5. Electronic records: Records generated and/or stored electronically, including emails, are subject to these policies in the same manner as printed documents. Retention decisions will be based on the content of the electronic record in the same manner as a printed document. As is the case with all records, they must be accessible and retrievable for the stated retention period.

6. Disposal of Expired Records: Annually, the second week of [month], each department of the (Arch)diocese of XXXX will dispose of records whose retention time has expired. Records may be shredded or, if electronic, deleted or destroyed by another approved method. No exceptions may be made, the retention times are absolute. Arrangements will be made for commercial shredding. A copy of the Certificate of Destruction will be executed and signed by the department head. One copy should be sent to Archives and the other retained by the department.

7. Certification of disposal of expired records: Each year, by [month] 1, every department head will submit to the Chancellor a letter testifying to the fact that all expired records pertaining to his/her department have been destroyed in accordance with the Record Retention Schedule.

8. Off-Site Storage of Inactive Records: Records that are generally inactive but must be retained permanently or for a set period of time will be stored off site. Records will be prepared for storage
annually during the second week of [month]. Boxes will be provided for the records. Each box will be identified with a label to be provided. A Certificate of Off-Site Storage must be completed in triplicate. One copy should be placed in the storage box. One copy sent to Archives and one copy retained by the department.

9. Conversion of Records to Electronic Medium: Paper records may be scanned or otherwise transferred to an electronic medium. When the conversion is complete the paper records will be destroyed in accordance with 6) above.

10. Administration: Administration of the Record Management and Retention Program will be the responsibility of the Chancellor of the (Arch)diocese and will be the specific responsibility of the (Arch)diocese of XXXX Archivist, who will publish the exact dates and confirm conformance to this policy by all departments. The Archivist will submit a written report of conformance to the Chancellor by [month date] of each year.

11. Changes and implementation: Changes to this policy or the Record Retention Schedule may be made only with the written approval of the (Arch)Bishop of XXXX. This policy will become effective upon approval of the (Arch)Bishop of XXXX with the first period for record disposal the [month] following promulgation.
The fact that a record is electronic or Email should not affect its retention. The schedule to be followed should be determined by the content of the record. For example, an Email about finance matters would follow the schedule for financial records. An

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Record Group</th>
<th>Type of Record</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Retained</th>
<th>Disposal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Administrative Records All Departments**

Administrative Records (correspondence, memoranda, rules and regulations, etc.)

- a. Records originating in the organization that document policy, procedure, rules or regulations
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- b. Records that document routine activities
  - 2 years
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- Abstracts, deeds (property)
  - Permanent
  - Paper
  - On site

- Annual Reports to (Status Animirum)
  - Permanent
  - Paper
  - On site

- Articles of Incorporation (of the church corporation, parish)
  - Permanent
  - Paper
  - On site

- Bequest and estate papers
  - Permanent
  - Paper
  - On site

- Bishop’s Decrees
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Communications from the Bishop regarding the parish
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Constitution and Bylaws (Diocesan Agencies)
  - Until dissolved
  - Paper
  - On site

- Correspondence, legal
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Correspondence, official (paper and email) Regarding diocesan directives and/or procedures
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Correspondence, routine
  - Biennial review
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- Donor lists
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Finance Committee Minutes
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Insurance policies
  - Permanent
  - Paper
  - On site

- Inventories of property and equipment
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Leases
  - Expiration + 7 years
  - Paper
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- Office files, general
  - Biennial review
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- Diocesan Pastoral Council constitutions
  - Until superseded
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- Diocesan Pastoral Council minutes
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site
  - Shred/elec

- Policy statements
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Subject files (Memos, rules, schedules, etc.)
  - Annual review
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

- Wills, testaments, codicils
  - Permanent
  - Paper/electronic
  - On site

114
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Archives</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parish History Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deceased Clergy Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photo Files (Priests, parishes, institutions, general)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec/micro</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clergy Card Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clergy Information Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baptism Record Index files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec/micro</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Catholic Directories</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former Bishops's Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annuario Pontificio Directories</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parish Boundaries Decrees and maps</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical material (Clippings, photos, booklets, etc. related to diocese and parishes)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diocesan directories (File copies)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diocesan/parish histories</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diocesan/parish anniversary books</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newsletters (diocesan, parish, affiliated organizations)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parish directories</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parish bulletins</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bishop's Office**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bishop's Office</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bishop's calendar</td>
<td>One year</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Correspondence</td>
<td>Perm → File</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HolySee/Nuncio Correspondence</td>
<td>Perm → File</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Diocesan Correspondence</td>
<td>Perm → File</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCCB Correspondence</td>
<td>Perm → File</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Catholic Schools Office</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardized Test Results</td>
<td>10 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curriculum Standards</td>
<td>Until superseded</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Program Allotments</td>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCEA Reports</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AHERA</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Management Plans*</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic Surveillance Reports *</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abatement documents &amp; manifests *</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TCCED</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Annual Report for Continued Accreditation</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Self-Study Document</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT Consensus Report/Notification of Status</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Required Actions</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interim Reports</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guide to Quality and Effectiveness Manual</td>
<td>Until superseded + 5 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCCED Health Manual</td>
<td>Until superseded</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual Deficiency Removal Plans/Verification</td>
<td>Termination + 5 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education Personnel</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificates and Licenses *</td>
<td>Termination + 5 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee Service Record including wage &amp; salary *</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Teacher Service Record * (included above)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment Applications (Potential Hires) *</td>
<td>2 years from receipt</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Transcripts *</td>
<td>Termination + 5 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment Contracts *</td>
<td>Last Effective date + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grievance Records * (not EEOC)</td>
<td>2 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training and Educational Attainment Records</td>
<td>Termination + 5 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On Site/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Catechetical Services</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catechetical Student Database</td>
<td>Death of Student</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contracts with educational institutions</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course evaluation</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diocesan Ministry Day Program Booklet</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handbooks and Manuals</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institutes (Christ the Servant and John Paul II)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parish Catechetical Profile</td>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renew/Why Catholic? Training Material</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCC-RE Annual Reports</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCC-RE Diocesan Reports</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious Education Reports (for diocesan offices)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Retention</td>
<td>Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chancellor</strong></td>
<td>Claimant Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ordination Records</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Settlement Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clergy Assignment Letters</td>
<td>Permanent → priest's file</td>
<td>Paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Communications</strong></td>
<td>News Media Clippings</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Employee Performance Reviews</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diocesan News Releases</td>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pastoral Center News</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clergy Newsletter</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Financial and Accounting</strong></td>
<td>Incident Reports (accidents/injury)</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Employee medical complaints</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Employee medical records</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Environmental test records/reports</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hazardous exposure records</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toxic Substance explore reports</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Workers Compensation Records</td>
<td>12 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Payroll</strong></td>
<td>Permanent earnings and records</td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Attendance records</td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Employee contracts</td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Employee deduction authorization</td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Employee salary schedules</td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Labor contracts</td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>W-2 years Forms</td>
<td>Filing + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>W-4 years Forms</td>
<td>Filing + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time Cards</td>
<td>Filing + 3 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time Records</td>
<td>Filing + 3 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Banking</strong></td>
<td>Bank deposits</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bank statements</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancelled checks</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check registers/stubs</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Item Description</td>
<td>Retention Period</td>
<td>Storage Location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>Audit reports</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balance sheets, annual</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balance sheets, monthly/quarterly</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Budgets, approved, revised</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial reports, annual</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial reports, monthly</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial statements</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investment/Insurance</td>
<td>Certificates of deposit, cancelled</td>
<td>Redemption + 3 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insurance policies, active</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insurance policies, cancelled</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mortgage records</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Letters of credit</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Securities sales</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stock investment</td>
<td>Sale + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting</td>
<td>Accounts payable, invoices</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounts payable, ledgers</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounts receivable, ledgers</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Credit card statements/charge slips</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Invoices and paid bills, major building construction</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Invoices and paid bills, general accounts</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cash books</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cash journals</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cash journal, receipts on offerings and pledges</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Receipts</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mortgage payments</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chart of accounts</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other records</td>
<td>General ledger, annual</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Journals, general and specific funds</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Journal entry sheets</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ledgers, subsidiary</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Payroll journals</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Payroll registers (summary schedule of earnings, deductions &amp; accrued leave)</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pension records</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pledge registers/ledgers</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Permanently restricted gift documents</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporarily restricted gift documents</td>
<td>7 yrs after restrictions</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tax Records</strong></td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment taxes (Contributions and payments including withholding &amp; FICA)</td>
<td>file + 7 years Paper/elec On site Shred/e/ec</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W-2 years forms</td>
<td>file + 7 years Paper/elec On site Shred/e/ec</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W-4 years forms</td>
<td>file + 7 years Paper/elec On site Shred/e/ec</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS exemption determination letters (Other than OCD listed organizations)</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form 9 years</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS exemption determination letters (Income, excise, property, sales, use, etc.)</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Records</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural records, blueprints, building designs, specifications</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural drawings</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deeds files</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortgage documents</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property appraisals</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real estate surveys/plots, plans</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title search papers and certificates</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cemetery Records</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account cards (record of lot ownership and payments)</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual report</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank statements</td>
<td>7 years Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board minutes</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burial cards (record of interred’s name, date of burial, etc.)</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burial records (record of interred’s name, date of burial, etc.)</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contracts documenting lot ownership</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correspondence</td>
<td>BANR Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General ledger</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot maps</td>
<td>Permanent Paper/elec On site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrative Records</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee Policy Manual</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Descriptions</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizational Chart</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-9 years Audit</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personnel Records</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Employee Application</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resume</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee Contracts/Offer Letters</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salary Information</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attendance Records (Jury, PTO, STD, LTD, FMLA, Bereavement)</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eligibility Verification Form 1-9 years</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Reviews</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Ups</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promotions/Transfers</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Benefit Records</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Enrollment</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Hire</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life Event</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cont. of Benefits</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term of Benefits</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disability Records STD/LTD</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMLA</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403B Retirement Plan</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life Insurance Policies</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefit Plan Description</td>
<td>Rollout + 4 years</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefit Plan Annual Reports</td>
<td>6 years</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personnel File</td>
<td>Termination + 4 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rejected Applications/Resumes</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pastoral Planning</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad Limina Reports (Quinquennial Report)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Vatican Report</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Catholic Directory Report</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May and October Mass Counts</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census records (parish)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/electronic</td>
<td>On site 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safe Environment</strong></td>
<td>Termination + 7 years</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening Form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interviews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criminal Background Check</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training Records</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Acknowledgement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer/Internet Policy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Newspaper</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newspaper back issues</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other newspaper back issues</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photos</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscription Database</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Website</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freelancer Information</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advertising Contracts</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tribunal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prenuptial Files</td>
<td>6 years paper/then electronic</td>
<td>Paper/elec</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nullity File Decisions</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nullity File Acta (other than decisions)</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vicar for Clergy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priests’ Personnel Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deacons’ Personnel Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clergy Rescript Files</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Youth Ministry</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiver of liability forms</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical release forms</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code of Conduct forms</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incident report forms</td>
<td>7 years after resolution</td>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>On site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
XVIII. Group Programs

Most (Arch)dioceses and their affiliated entities establish group programs to administer financial activities of common interest and need. These activities have also been referred to as "Service Funds". The two most common examples are Benefit Plans and Property/Liability/Casualty Insurance Plans that include all of the affiliated ministry entities of the (Arch)diocese and their employees. These Programs are usually administered by or at the Central Administrative Offices of the (Arch)diocese.

The following are general matters that must be considered in administering the financial activities of the Programs:

1. Legal Structure of the Program – Programs operate within the legal structure of the (Arch)diocese or through separate corporations, trusts or other legal entities established to manage the activities of the Programs.
2. The Governing Body of the Program – Separate governing bodies for these Programs may be established with varying degrees of accountability to the Ordinary, in accordance with Canon Law.
3. Federal, State and Local Regulation – Federal, State and Local laws and regulations applicable to these Programs must be considered. Legal Counsel should be consulted in these matters.

The following are major financial administration matters pertinent to these Programs:

4. These Programs should be accounted for as separate “funds” in accordance with Not For Profit accounting principles, distinct from the other operating activities of the (Arch)diocese.
5. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles in the United States (GAAP) should be followed in accounting for and reporting on the activities of these Programs. Generally accepted industry accounting and reporting standards (i.e., Insurance industry) should also be considered.
6. The form and content of Program financial reports prepared in accordance with GAAP must take into consideration the scope of the entity for which financial statements are being prepared.
7. The main sources of revenue to these Programs should be contributions and premiums paid by the participating entities. Similarly the benefits, claims or other expenses of the Programs should be on behalf of or for benefit of the same entities.
8. The financial activities of these Programs are reported as Unrestricted activities. In individual financial reports prepared in accordance with GAAP, the Net Assets of the Programs could be reported as Unrestricted. When these Programs’ accounts are included in Combined or Consolidated reports of a larger entity, the Net Assets of the Program should be reported as Unrestricted, Designated funds.
9. As with all designated funds, the Governing Body of the Program may change its Net Asset Designations from time-to-time based upon the financial needs and plans of the Program. With insurance funds, an example would be the need to carry sufficient reserves for self-insured claims (a liability).
10. Effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2014, ASU2013-6 requires a recipient not-for-profit entity to recognize all services received form personnel of an affiliate that directly benefit the recipient not-for-profit entity. Those services should be measured at the cost recognized by the affiliate for the personnel providing those services. Under certain circumstances, these provisions may apply to Group Programs.
XIX. School Tuition vs. Donation

Payments made to a parish by parents of children enrolled in a Catholic school may qualify as deductible contributions if they are gifts, i.e., if they are voluntary transfers of funds made with no expectation of obtaining commensurate benefit. Specifically, enrollment in the school must in no manner be contingent on making the payment; the payment must not be made pursuant to a plan, whether express or implied, to convert nondeductible tuition into charitable contributions; and the receipt of the benefit, schooling or reduced tuition payments, must not otherwise be dependent upon such payment.

Rev. Rul. 83-104, 1983-2 C.B. 46, cites the following factors as creating a presumption that a payment is NOT a charitable contribution:

1. The existence of a contract, express or implied, whereby a taxpayer (i.e., parents, etc.) agrees to make a contribution and which insures school admission for the taxpayer’s child;
2. A plan allowing taxpayers either to pay tuition or make contributions in exchange for schooling;
3. The earmarking of contributions for the direct benefit of a particular individual; or
4. The otherwise unexplained denial of admission/readmission of children of taxpayers who are financially able but who do not contribute.

Additional adverse factors include:

5. The absence of a significant tuition charge;
6. Substantial or unusual (different from that applied to non-parents) pressure applied to parents of children attending school;
7. Contribution appeals made as part of the admissions or enrollment process;
8. The absence of significant school revenue sources other than parent contributions; and
9. Other factors suggesting a contribution policy created as a means of avoiding characterization of payments as tuition.

Situation 6 of Rev. Rul. 83-104 sanctions differential tuition for parishioners and non-parishioners in certain limited circumstances, as follows. This is a case in which there is no tuition to the parish school for parishioners, but non-parishioners are charged tuition. The parish receives contributions from all its members. These contributions are available to support all parish activities, a substantial portion of which are unrelated to the school. The parish has full control over the use of the contributions it receives. Most parish members do not have children in the school. The methods of soliciting contributions from parishioners with children in the school are the same as the methods of soliciting members without children in the school. In this situation, IRS concluded that the contributions made by parishioners with children in the school are ordinarily deductible, unless there is a showing that contributions by parishioners with children in the school are significantly larger than those of other parishioners. The IRS has indicated in other rulings that it will compare parental giving levels to non-parental giving levels in evaluating deductibility of payments. The test is whether the parish has full control of the donated funds, and discretion as to their use, to ensure that they will be used to carry out the parish’s functions and purposes.

Any attempt to link school enrollment or tuition reductions/benefits to parish contributions or level of parish contributions jeopardizes the deductibility of contributions by parishioners who benefit from such practices. Various labels given to parish contributions, e.g., sacrificial giving, tithing, negotiated tuition, stewardship, minimum giving, etc., are not determinative of deductibility. Further, parishes cannot qualify under Situation 6 by defining parish membership, or otherwise qualifying for reduced or no tuition.
according to level of contribution. All such practices undercut parish claims that parish contributions are gifts, the *sine qua non* of charitable deductibility.

Factors which may be considered in determining eligibility for tuition reductions/benefits include:

- Being baptized as a Catholic,
- Being registered in the parish, and
- Attending Mass regularly

Additionally, consideration may also be given to the family’s commitment of time and talent to the parish. It is important for the parish to clearly communicate the determinative factors to parents of children attending Catholic schools.

---

1 Tripp v. Commissioner, 337 F.2d 432 (7th Cir. 1964), the court held that payments made to an educational institution and earmarked for the educational expenses of a particular individual were not deductible because they were neither made to the college for use as it saw fit nor made for the benefit of an indefinite number of persons, as, for example, a scholarship fund
XX. National Special Collections

Canon Law

Canon 1266 of the revised Code of Canon Law states:

In all churches and oratories which are, in fact, habitually open to the Christian faithful, including those which belong to religious institutes, the local ordinary can order the taking up of a special collection for specific parochial, (Arch)diocesan, national, or universal projects; this collection must be diligently sent afterwards to the (Arch)diocesan curia. ¹

The New Commentary on the Code of Canon Law explains this further:

The collection must be for a specific, not indeterminate, undertaking, but it need not be (Arch)diocesan; it can be parochial (i.e., aid to a poor or struggling parish) or national or international. Nor does the undertaking or project which is the object of a mandated collection have to rise to the level of a need or necessity, as in the case of a tax (see canon 1263), suggesting that the motivating causes for collections can be less urgent than those for taxes.

The final clause in Canon 1266 requires that the proceeds of a mandated collection be sent diligently (sedulo) to the (Arch)diocesan curia. The import of the adverb is twofold: that the proceeds are sent without delay and in their entirety. All proceeds should be remitted within five (5) months of the collection date. Unless contributors have been so informed in advance, no part of the proceeds may be withheld at the parish or any other level; not to turn over the entirety of the collection immediately is to violate the intentions of the donors. In addition, as such withholding becomes known, it seriously compromises the perceived integrity of fund-raising in the Church. ²

Collections

The United States Conference of Catholic Bishops administers eight national collections:

- Church in Latin America
- Catholic Relief Services (formerly the American Bishops’ Overseas Appeal)
- Catholic Communication Campaign
- Retirement Fund for Religious
- Catholic Campaign for Human Development
- Aid to the Church in Central and Eastern Europe
- Catholic Home Missions Appeal
- Church in Africa
Other collections include the following:

- Black and Indian Missions
- The Catholic University of America
- Good Friday Collection for the Holy Land
- Operation Rice Bowl
- Peter’s Pence (Charities of the Holy Father)
- World Mission Sunday
**Accounting Treatment**

Special collections are free-will offerings of the faithful with no mandatory quota placed on a parish or a (Arch)diocese. To do so would transform a collection into a tax (canon 1263). A tax would be revenue and accounted for accordingly. Paragraph 3, canon 1267, states, "Offerings given by the faithful for a certain purpose can be applied only for that same purpose."

Accounting for special collections is primarily set forth in the FASB’s Accounting Standards Codification Topic #958 – Not for Profit Entities and, its related sub-topic 605 – Revenue Recognition.

Special collection proceeds that are not retained by a (Arch)diocese should be accounted for as an agency transaction (liability) by the (Arch)diocese, unless the (Arch)diocese has been granted the power by the donors to determine the beneficiaries ("variance power"). To the extent a (Arch)diocese has variance power, that portion should be accounted for as temporarily restricted revenue and temporarily restricted net assets until the funds are remitted to the beneficiaries chosen by the (Arch)diocese.

Where donors have been so informed, portions of certain collections are permitted to be retained by a (Arch)diocese and used by the (Arch)diocese. Those funds are classified as temporarily restricted revenue and net assets until they are used for the same intent as a portion transmitted nationally or internationally. The donor provided the offering for a particular purpose; therefore, there is a donor restriction on the retained portion, causing the revenue to be temporarily restricted.

The USCCB has issued specific guidelines, *One Church, One Mission: Guidelines for Administering USCCB Collections in Diocese.*

**Notes**


XXI. Parish Financial Management

There are more than 17,500 parishes in the United States with a vast amount of Church assets that are entrusted to them. Strong systems of internal controls are needed to reduce the risk of fraud, misuse, waste or embezzlement. An effective internal control environment consists of written policies that are communicated regularly, well-documented procedures that are operating effectively, proper and frequent training of personnel, and effective monitoring of systems and procedures, with appropriate feedback. The existence and effectiveness of parish internal controls should be evaluated periodically.

Each (Arch)diocese should consider implementing the financial management practices outlined herein to enhance its internal control environment. The Committee on Budget and Finance of the USCCB has endorsed these recommendations. These recommendations are designed to improve existing (Arch)diocesan policies and procedures relative to financial management at the parish level and, therefore, should be viewed in the context of enhancements to, and/or a re-doubling of, existing efforts.

In the foreword to (Arch)diocesan Internal Controls, which was created by the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops’ Accounting Practices Committee and published by the USCCB Committee on Budget and Finance in 1995, Archbishop Murphy, then-Treasurer, notes that “Canon 1284 states that all administrators are to perform their duties with the diligence of a good householder. While the parish pastor/administrator is the administrator of the parish and its property, it is the responsibility of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop “to exercise careful vigilance over the administration of all the goods which belong to the public juridic persons subject to him, without prejudice to legitimate titles which attribute more significant rights to him” (c. 1276 § 1). Furthermore, the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop is “to take care of the ordering of the entire matter of the administration of ecclesiastical goods by issuing special instructions within the limits of universal and particular law” (c. 1276 § 2). The executive summary of that document points out: “Although the (Arch)bishop will not become too involved in the details of the internal control system, he is the only person who has the power to ensure that each area of a (Arch)diocese carries out its responsibility for the system. The proper tone must be set at the top of the organization, and for a (Arch)diocese, that is the (Arch)bishop.” As such, there must be effective oversight by the (Arch)bishop for compliance with all (Arch)diocesan policies in each area of the (Arch)diocese, and each of the following recommendations are made within that overarching mindset.

1. A properly functioning parish finance council is integral to good parish financial management, is required by canon law (c. 537), and a key element of a parish internal control system. To that end, and similar to the USCCB resolution entitled (Arch)diocesan Financial Reporting, each parish should send a letter to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop annually containing:
   a. The names and professional titles of the members of the parish finance council
   b. The dates on which the parish finance council has met during the preceding fiscal year and since the end of the fiscal year
   c. The date(s) on which the approved (i.e. by the parish finance council) parish financial statements/budgets were made available to the parishioners during the preceding fiscal year and since the end of the fiscal year. A copy of said published financial statements/budgets should be provided to the (Arch)bishop.
   d. A statement signed by the parish pastor and the finance council members that they have met, developed, and discussed the financial statements and budget of the parish

2. Thorough (Arch)diocesan training should be provided by the (Arch)diocese to parish finance
council members relative to their roles and responsibilities.

3. (Arch)diocesan policies addressing conflicts of interest, protection of whistleblowers, and fraud (including prosecution in all cases) should be regularly communicated by the (Arch)diocese to all parishes.

4. All parishes should complete an annual internal control questionnaire, and a proper review and follow-up be made by qualified (Arch)diocesan personnel.

5. Parish financial manuals should be developed by (Arch)dioceses, containing best practices, similar to *Diocesan Financial Issues* which has been developed for dioceses.

6. Standard parish accounting policies and financial reporting standards should be developed by the (Arch)diocese, including a standard chart of accounts for all parishes and schools.

7. Financial training should be integrated into current seminarian programs such that students will be better prepared to handle these eventualities.

The following tools have been developed to assist (Arch)dioceses in implementing the above recommendations:

a. Sample parish reporting form to be used for certification of the parish finance council’s activities (Sample A)

b. Sample agenda for parish finance council training (Sample B)

c. An example of parish finance council guidelines. This document represents the guidelines promulgated by the Archdiocese of Chicago and is provided solely as an example (Sample C)

d. Sample parish internal control questionnaire (Sample D)

e. Sample parish accounting policies and financial reporting standards (Sample E)
Dear (Arch)Bishop:

Enclosed are the financial statements that were made available to parishioners for the fiscal period ended _______________. Please accept this statement as the annual certification concerning financial management of the parish for the current fiscal period. This is to certify to the following:

1. that the annual budget was made available to parishioners on _______________ (date);
2. that periodic financial statements (including, but not limited to a Statement of Financial Position and Statement of Activities) were made available to parishioners, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date of financial statements</th>
<th>Date Issued to Parishioners</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. that the finance council regularly reviews and discusses the budget and periodic financial statements. Meetings of the finance council during the above period, and since the end of the period, were held on the following dates:

•
•
•
•
•
The above is hereby attested to by the Pastor and the members of the Parish Finance Council:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Printed Name</th>
<th>Occupation</th>
<th>Signature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Insert (Arch)diocesan-specific requirements for certification here.*

Sincerely yours, Pastor

cc: (Arch)diocesan Chief Financial Officer
Sample B: Parish Finance Council Training

Introduction

The Parish Finance Council (the "Council") is integral to good parish financial management. The Council is a consultative body that assists the pastor in the financial administration of the parish. Canon law mandates that all parishes have a Finance Council:

In each parish there is to be a finance council which is governed, in addition to universal law, by norms issued by the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop and in which the Christian faithful, selected according to these same norms, are to assist the pastor in the administration of the goods of the parish, without prejudice to the prescript of canon 532. (c. 537).

To be effective, the Parish Finance Council should meet regularly (no less than quarterly) with specific agendas and should have access to all relevant financial information of the parish. The Council should consist of no less than three members who are chosen based on demonstrable skills or expertise in management, finance and accounting.

The Parish Finance Council assists with the financial management of the parish. Major responsibilities of the Parish Finance Council include input to, and review of the parish annual budget and periodic financial statements; review of internal controls and procedures; and planning for the temporal needs of the parish.

Each (Arch)diocese should consider developing a Parish Finance Council charter containing guidelines for the proper functioning of the Council, an example of which is attached. In addition, each (Arch)diocese should consider providing periodic training for Parish Finance Council members relative to their roles and responsibilities.

Agenda:

1. Review of the Parish Finance Council charter: roles & responsibilities (see sample provided), addressing:
   a. Consultative nature of the council
   b. Recommended areas for consultation
   c. Membership
      • Representation and background
      • Number of members
      • Officers
      • Conflicts of interest
      • Role of parish employees
      • Terms
d. Meeting protocol
   - Scheduling meetings
   - Agendas
   - Minutes
   - Confidentiality
   - Record retention

e. Subcommittees
f. Relationship to other parish groups/councils
g. Checklist of major activities

2. Financial inter-relationship between the Parish Finance Council and the (Arch)diocesan Central Administrative Office:
   *Review and discussion of:*
   - Services provided by the Central Office
   - Assessments
   - Arch)diocesan/Special collections

3. (Arch)diocesan-issued financial polices & guidelines for parishes
   *Review and discussion of –*
   - Financial reporting requirements of the (Arch)diocese
   - Clergy remuneration policy
   - Other significant policies

4. Internal control considerations
   - (Arch)diocesan internal control questionnaire (see sample provided)

5. Not-for-profit accounting
   - Restricted vs. unrestricted donations
   - Reporting for programs

6. Legal and regulatory compliance issues
Sample C: Parish Finance Council Guidelines

(Printed with the permission of the Archdiocese of Chicago—Version as of August 9, 2007—see website)
http://www.archdioceseofchicago.org/departments/financial_services/default.aspx

This document is intended as an overview of the responsibilities and roles of Parish Finance Councils as defined by Canon Law and best practices of parish administration. An active and well-formed Parish Finance Council is an important and necessary support to the parish administrator in fulfilling his duty of being a good steward of parish resources. A Parish Finance Council supports the good management of a parish and helps there be accountability to the (Arch)diocese and to the parishioners. Each individual (Arch)diocese is encouraged to review this document and the best practices contained herein and modify the document to conform it to the specific norms and particular law of that (Arch)diocese.

Table of Contents

I. INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND
II. CONSULTATIVE BODY TO PASTOR
III. MEMBERSHIP
IV. MEETING PROTOCOLS
V. SUBCOMMITTEES
VI. RELATIONSHIP TO PASTORAL COUNCIL
VII. RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER PARISH GROUPS/ COUNCILS
VIII. A CHECKLIST OF MAJOR ACTIVITIES

Appendix A. References – Canons 1281-1288
Appendix B. RESOURCES and REFERENCE INFORMATION
I. INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND

Parish Finance Councils assist the pastor in the administration of parish temporal matters. These guidelines are designed to aid Pastors and Finance Council members in the effective functioning of a Parish Finance Council by supporting the pastor in his stewardship of parish resources while being accountable to the parish and the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop. An active, well-formed Parish Finance Council is a key element for promoting the financial health of a parish, assuring accountability and assisting the pastor with his temporal responsibilities.

In the administration of temporal goods of the parish, Canon 532 defines the role of the pastor as the authoritative representative of the parish. Canon 532 says,

“The pastor represents the parish in all juridic affairs in accord with the norm of law; he is to see to it that the goods of the parish are administered in accord with the norms of canons 1281-1288.”

Canon 537 introduces the Parish Finance Council as a mandated body having an advisory and consultative role with the pastor. Canon 537 says,

“Each parish is to have a finance council which is regulated by universal law as well as by norms issued by the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop; in this council the Christian faithful, selected according to the same norms, aid the pastor in the administration of parish goods with due regard for the prescription of canon 532.”

Every parish therefore is required to have a Parish Finance Council, both by adherence to the Code of Canon Law and by local norms issued by the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop. To be effective the Parish Finance Council should meet regularly with specific agendas and should have access to all the relevant financial information and policies of the parish.

What follows is an outline of suggested ways to organize and operate a Parish Finance Council. Each (Arch)diocese may also establish particular norms that more specifically define how a Parish Finance Council is expected to operate. Additionally, depending on the legal structure of a parish (either canonically or civilly), its corporate statutes may define additional roles and responsibilities for the Parish Finance Council.

II. CONSULTATIVE BODY TO PASTOR

The Finance Council works closely with the pastor, who is accountable to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop for the administration and stewardship of the temporal goods of the parish. The pastor, according to Canon Law, has among his responsibilities, the responsibility for parish financial and temporal management. The Parish Finance Council is a consultative body that assists the pastor in meeting these obligations. While the Parish Finance Council does not have decision making authority, consultation is at the heart of the decision-making process – sharing information, listening, contributing to the discussion, and promoting consensus.

1 Note: the full texts of Canons 1281-1288 may be found in Appendix A to this document.
Canon law states that the pastor is obligated to consult the Finance Council on certain matters. Although the pastor is not obliged to follow the recommendations of the Finance Council, the pastor should not act against such advice, especially when there is consensus, unless there is an overriding reason. In other words, the prudent pastor would not ignore the advice of the Finance Council unless there was a serious reason to do so. When acting contrary to its recommendations the pastor should provide an explanation to the Finance Council regarding the reasons for his decision.

In order to be effective in their responsibilities as members of the Parish Finance Council, members should have a love for the Church and its mission and develop a thorough understanding of the parish’s mission, goals, people and other resources. The members should have knowledge of (Arch)diocesan statutes and policies regarding temporal issues and other financial matters. It is the pastor’s responsibility to give the members appropriate background and enrichment so they are able to carry out their duties.

**Recommended Areas for Finance Council Consultation:**

1. The advice of the Finance Council should be sought both for acts of ordinary administration and acts of extraordinary administration. However, the degree of consultation varies. For certain actions of day-to-day administration, the pastor does not need any specific authorization to carry out such acts, but may find it helpful to seek the advice of the Parish Finance Council even in these matters. (For example, while the purchase of ordinary amounts of office supplies is within the pastor’s authority, the Finance Council may provide useful advice on strategies that reduce the cost of such recurring purchases.)

2. (Arch)diocesan norms require the pastor to consult with the Parish Finance Council at some level of financial commitment. For example, in the Archdiocese of Chicago the pastor must consult with the Parish Finance Council regarding any commitment of parish resources over $10,000. In some other (Arch)dioceses, this threshold is tied to the level of parish income, for example, any commitment more than 1% of parish revenue requires consultation with the Parish Finance Council.

3. A parish will also need to seek written approval of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop prior to performing extraordinary acts of administration (c. 1281.1). Extraordinary acts of administration are defined by local norms and sometimes by the particular statutes of the parish. Extraordinary acts taken without such approval of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop are invalid acts and may also be invalid from a civil law standpoint. Examples of actions that some (Arch)dioceses consider to be extraordinary acts of administration include: instances where the expenditure is greater than $20,000 (or such amount as determined in a particular (Arch)diocese) and involves a contract (employment, construction/repair, equipment, consulting, or services such as landscaping or cleaning), the acquisition or alienation of real property, the entering of a lease, the collateralization or mortgaging of real property, the sale of religious artifacts that would be considered as part of a parish’s patrimony (e.g. stained glass windows) and other matters. In the case of acts of extraordinary administration, the pastor must consult with his Finance Council prior to seeking approval of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop.
4. The advice of the Finance Council should be sought in the management of parish funds and banking arrangements. A limited number of bank accounts should be established and procedures for approving new accounts should be in place. The Finance Council should approve a new bank account before it is opened. This also applies to bank accounts for auxiliary groups.

5. The Finance Council should review the parish annual budget and parish annual report. They should ordinarily be involved in the preparation of both reports, particularly the budget report. After review, the chairperson of the Finance Council is to co-sign each report before it is submitted to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop.

6. Annually, along with the parish annual report, each parish is required to send a letter to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop containing:
   a. The names and professional titles of the members of the Parish Finance Council.
   b. The dates on which the Parish Finance Council met during the fiscal year for which the report was prepared, along with the dates of all meetings since fiscal year end.
   c. The date(s) on which the approved (i.e. by the Parish Finance Council) parish financial statements/budgets were made available to parishioners during the preceding fiscal year and since the end of the fiscal year. A copy of said published financial statements/budgets should be provided to the (Arch)bishop.
   d. A statement signed by the pastor or parish administrator and the Parish Finance Council members that they have met, developed, and discussed the financial statements and budget of the parish.

7. The Finance Council should provide assistance in the formulation and communication of the Annual Financial Report to the parish community, as required by Canon 1287.2. The Annual Financial Report to the parish community often includes more than just financial information (e.g. description of key issues, programs and events, statistics related to church attendance, sacraments, school and religious education enrollment, etc.). Additionally, many parishes find it helpful to provide parishioners with semi-annual or even quarterly updates on the parish’s financial condition. Understandable, regular and complete communication to parishioners is a key responsibility of the parish administrator and an important area for the Parish Finance Council to assist. Communication keeps parishioners informed of the parish’s condition, its priorities, its needs, and progress on previously announced initiatives.

8. The Finance Council should review any indebtedness of the parish and assist the pastor in fulfilling his obligations under canon 1284.5, i.e. to “pay the interest on a loan or mortgage when it is due and take care that the capital debt itself is repaid in due time.” Planning for debt repayment should be an integral part of the budget process. In some cases local norms require the Finance Council chairperson to co-sign, with the pastor, any parish loan to acknowledge that the loan has been discussed with the Finance Council.

9. Regularly review periodic (at least quarterly) financial reports – balance sheet, income statements, comparisons to budget as well as prior year results and cash flow analysis.

10. Detail of budget to actual comparisons should be reviewed by individual program category, such as the elementary school and religious education. Significant variances from budgeted figures should be investigated and explained.
11. Review of internal control and procedures:
   a. If written procedures do not exist, participate in the development of written procedures for cash receipts, cash disbursements, administration of bank accounts, petty cash, and payroll.
   b. Review the financial reports for parish general operations, parish school(s) and other parish organizations or programs with bank accounts or revenue collection responsibilities, to determine that proper accounting practices and internal control procedures are in place.
   c. Alternatively, after consultation with the (Arch)diocesan finance office, the parish may engage a CPA firm to perform an audit.

12. Review the activities of any parish auxiliary groups and verify cash balances of bank accounts. Annually meet with auxiliary groups to review the reporting of past year’s activities and a review of the budget for the coming year. Assess the accounting practices and internal control procedures in use to insure compliance with (Arch)diocesan policies. Review the activities of the auxiliary groups to assure that they are not jeopardizing the tax-exempt status of the parish.

13. Consult on the construction or renovation of parish facilities, the sale or purchase of parish property, and lease agreements. The Finance Council assists the pastor in planning for repair, replacement, or service of property and equipment to ensure that the parish buildings and property are adequately maintained. Review maintenance and utility costs seeking to minimize costs through preventative maintenance, energy conservation, and the implementation of risk management programs and recommendations.

14. Assess effectiveness of existing fund-raising programs and recommend new programs or changes to existing programs if revenues are insufficient. Support parish and (Arch)diocesan stewardship programs.

15. Review of fundraising activities, such as raffles, bingo, and concession sales for acquisition of required licenses, support documentation for tax filings, and actual tax filings.

16. Provide advice on matters requiring proxies by the parish civil corporation when it is incorporated separately.

17. Become knowledgeable on (Arch)diocesan fiscal policies and norms to provide advice on implementation. Evaluate compliance with (Arch)diocesan fiscal policies and assist the pastor in meeting these obligations.

18. Provide advice on what the parish needs to do to comply with (Arch)diocesan policies and USCCB recommendations with respect to conflicts of interest, protection of whistleblowers and fraud detection, reporting and prevention.

19. Provide advice on how to use undesignated bequests or other unbudgeted revenue.

20. Provide advice on hiring and evaluating a business manager or anyone providing business services to the parish. Provide advice on training that might be helpful for parish staff.
21. Where possible, help the pastor establish and manage a parish endowment program. Particularly, help 
sure that the purpose of the endowment is well-defined considering the long-term needs and life of 
the parish and that any restricted gifts are first reviewed to assure that the parish can accept the 
restriction and, once accepted, that the funds are spent consistent with the donor restriction(s). 
Similarly, provide advice and oversight if an endowment already exists.

III. MEMBERSHIP

The Parish Finance Council is about the life of a community of faith and, as such, its members should be 
members of that community of faith. As in other matters, the Pastor may use his discretion in the selection 
of qualified members from the parish community.

1. Representation

a. Members should be drawn from the parish community and reflect its diversity. This requirement 
may be waived if special expertise is sought. Where appropriate, outside advice and counsel can 
also be engaged to obtain needed specific expertise.

b. Members of the Parish Finance Council should be chosen based on demonstrable skills or 
expertise in management and/or finance. Skill sets to consider include business, law, accounting, 
and communications. Additionally, persons with professional knowledge and experience in 
engineering, construction, maintenance, and purchasing could also make a significant 
contribution and should be recruited when available. Expertise can vary widely and include a 
business executive, accountant, lawyer, and small business owner (any business, even a small 
neighborhood business). The unique talents within the parish community should be sought. A 
parish Time, Talent, and Treasure survey may be helpful in identifying parishioners having the 
desired skills and willingness to serve.

2. Number of Members

a. Membership should consist of no less than three members.

b. A quorum shall consist of the majority of members.

c. It is recommended that the Parish Finance Council have an odd number of members and that, except 
for unusual circumstances, membership be capped at no more than nine voting members.

d. It may be helpful to form subcommittees.

3. Officers

a. The officers of the Parish Finance Council shall be a Chairperson and a Secretary.

b. The pastor shall appoint the Chairperson after the members have gone through a period of 
discernment.

c. The Chairperson will preside in a parliamentary manner at all meetings and, in consultation with 
the Pastor or Parochial Administrator, will be responsible for selecting the hour and location of 
meetings, preparing the meeting agenda, and any other duties so assigned by the Pastor or 
Parochial Administrator.

d. The Secretary will be responsible for the recording and distribution of minutes, notifying 
members of upcoming meetings, maintaining a permanent record of each member’s tenure and 
of business conducted by the Parish Finance Council, and any other duties so assigned by the 
Chairperson.
4. Conflicts of Interest / Preclusion to Membership

a. Parish Finance Council members owe the parish a duty of loyalty. The duty of loyalty requires a Parish Finance Council member to act in the interest of the parish rather than in the personal interest of the member or some other person or organization. In particular, the duty of loyalty requires a Parish Finance Council member to avoid conflicts of interest that are detrimental to the parish.

b. Any person who may have a conflict of interest in view of other services, either paid or unpaid, rendered to the parish by the Parish Finance Council member, the member’s family or the member’s business is ineligible to serve as a member of the Parish Finance Council.

c. On an annual basis the Parish Finance Council members should disclose in writing any known financial interest that the individual, or a member of the individual’s family, has in any business entity that transacts business with the parish.

d. No parish employee or member of the family of an employee or relative of the pastor may serve on the finance council.

e. Members of the Parish Finance Council may serve in other volunteer service roles in the parish such as other committees or boards if, in the judgment of the pastor, such dual service will not create conflict of interest situations. The role of the Parish Finance Council should not be vitiated.

f. It is recommended that no member should serve on the Parish Finance Council at the same time as a closely related person (e.g. husband and wife, mother and son).

5. Role of Parish Employee

Parish employees are not members of the Parish Finance Council; they are staff and support the Parish Finance Council. Parish employees should be available to answer questions regarding parish programs, accounting, financial reporting, and internal controls. The Finance Council should be provided relevant and timely information including financial reports (balance sheet, income statement, budget to actual comparisons, loan balance payments and interest payments, investment of surplus funds, and status of fundraising drives) to review.

The parish Business Manager should attend meetings in a consultative, non-voting capacity. Likewise, when parish buildings and grounds are to be discussed, inviting staff responsible for these areas can enhance the discussion.

6. Acknowledgement of Members

Acknowledge members’ contributions to the Finance Council and subcommittees at meetings, in the minutes, in the bulletin and in other appropriate ways.

7. Terms

a. Members are to be appointed by the pastor for fixed terms to be determined at the local level, and may be reappointed or terminated in this role by the pastor at the pastor’s sole discretion. It is suggested that reappointments are limited to a specific period of time. It may be helpful to stagger the terms so that there is continuity of service and no disruption to the function of the Finance Council. For example, a parish may adopt a term of three years, renewable once.
b. When a pastorate becomes vacant, it is recommended that the Parish Finance Council remain in place to assist the administrator and to provide continuity in a transition. After a suitable period of transition with a new pastor, the new pastor can ask the council members if they are willing to complete their respective terms or whether he would like some or all of the members to resign so that new members can be recruited to the Parish Finance Council.

IV. MEETING PROTOCOLS

In striving for openness and accountability in its practices, meeting minutes summarizing the items discussed and the decisions reached should be recorded. Prepared agendas, distributed in advance, will keep meetings focused.

Plan meetings in advance and create an annual schedule of meeting dates and times. This will increase participation by members.

1. Schedule Meetings

Schedule meeting times at least once a quarter, or more frequently if required. Some parishes use a format of the finance council meeting every other month with subcommittees meeting during the off months. Meeting times and dates should be predictable, such as a day and week of each month. Since the purpose of the Parish Finance Council is to provide advice and support to the pastor, the pastor should be present at the Parish Finance Council meetings.

Formulate a communication method among officers to deal with Parish Finance Council matters between meetings.

2. Use of Agendas and Review Materials

Meeting agendas should be prepared in advance of the meeting by consultation between the Pastor and Parish Finance Council Chair. The agenda should list the major items for discussion. Supplying information in advance to members will lead to more productive meetings.

3. Recording of Meeting Minutes

Minutes should be recorded by the Parish Finance Council Secretary and archived as part of the parish permanent record.

4. Confidentiality

Members should maintain confidentiality on those matters designated as confidential. Materials such as agendas, meeting minutes, and review materials should not be disclosed to others if designated as confidential.

Parish Finance Council meetings are typically not open to the parish community. Reports to the community will be shared once decisions are finalized. Communication with the parish should also occur at the onset of studying an issue to solicit needs and concerns, gifts and resources of the parish community. The primary purpose of the Parish Finance Council is to provide open and honest advice to
the pastor, if the meetings occurred in a public forum, the discussion may be too limited. The Finance Council should advise the pastor on the best ways to keep the parish informed and involved in key issues and decisions facing the parish.

4. Record Retention

The parish should retain meeting minutes, agendas, handouts, reports, and materials reviewed during the meeting for future reference by either internal or external parties.

V. SUBCOMMITTEES

It often makes sense to divide the Finance Council into subcommittees to deal with responsibilities and duties. The magnitude and complexity of the different subcommittees depends upon the size, resources, obligations, and needs of each particular parish. The Finance Council, following the priorities established by the Parish Pastoral Council, coordinates the work of these subcommittees.

The work of the subcommittees may encompass the following:

1. Budget Subcommittee
   a. To assist the pastor in the preparation, presentation, and review of an annual budget for both operating and capital expenditures based upon the goals and objectives determined by the Parish Pastoral Council. This approved budget should be published and made available to parishioners.
   b. To assist other programs and ministries in preparing and submitting their annual budgets to the parish.
   c. To study parish revenue and make recommendations to the Parish Pastoral Council for maintaining and increasing revenues in order to meet parish objectives and priorities.
   d. To periodically (e.g. monthly or quarterly) review income and expenditures and make recommendations as necessary to see that expenses are within set limits. Monitor parish contribution trends.
   e. To provide parishioners with periodic (e.g. semi-annual or annual), comprehensive written reports on the parish’s financial position, including a statement of activity and balance sheet accounts. Consider oral reports to parishioners to elaborate on key results and issues.
   f. To work with the elementary school and the religious education program regarding the budget, review internal controls of the business office, and prepare recommendations regarding subsidy approval. The same applies if supporting a regional school or consolidated school and may involve communication with other Parish Finance Councils or with a School Finance Council.
   g. To review periodic financial audits of the parish performed by an independent auditor and advice on how to address and correct identified weaknesses.
   h. Assist in communicating results of audits to parishioners.
i. Conduct self-administered audits of internal controls and procedures. Particularly focus on areas involving cash receipts and any disbursements. Review procedures used for gathering, counting and recording Sunday collections and tuition and control of bank accounts. Confirm duties are adequately segregated. Share findings with appropriate (Arch)diocesan personnel.

j. To ensure that tamper-evident cash bags along with a robust collection and counting procedure is routinely used in the parish. Tamper-evident bags with robust handling procedures are required for any event or activity handling cash.

k. To ensure that bank reconciliations are regularly completed very soon after each bank statement is received and that the reconciliations are checked by someone other than the person performing the reconciliation.

l. To educate parishioners about stewardship and the need for parish involvement and support. If a parish has a separate stewardship committee this responsibility would fall to that committee.

m. To review cost-cutting measures when necessary.

2. **Facilities and Maintenance Subcommittee**

   a. Advise the Pastor regarding the results of quarterly inspection of all parish facilities.

   b. Recommend repairs or replacements based on priorities established by these inspections.

   c. Develop a detailed inventory of all parish assets in accordance with Canon 1283.2 and update the inventory on an annual basis.

   d. Assist in the development of guidelines concerning use of parish facilities.

   e. Assist in the development of parish energy conservation programs.

   f. Develop teams of parishioners who will donate time and talents for parish maintenance tasks, taking note of the extent to which such work is allowed to be performed by volunteers under the guidelines of the (Arch)diocesan risk management and insurance programs.

   g. Review the parish’s risk management and loss prevention reports in order to insure corrective action is taken where necessary.

   h. Ensure that the safety and security of the parish campus is addressed and reviewed regularly.

3. **Financial Planning and Development Subcommittee**

   a. To provide long-range planning for both the financial and physical needs of the parish.

   b. To work closely with the budget and maintenance subcommittees, the Parish Pastoral Council and other parish organizations to adequately plan and identify for the long range financial and physical needs of the parish.
VI. RELATIONSHIP TO PASTORAL COUNCIL

Since the Parish Finance Council relates to the administrative responsibilities of the pastor, it should not be a part of the Parish Pastoral Council structure. However an officer from the Parish Finance Council may serve as an ex-officio member of the Parish Pastoral Council. Communication between the two councils is essential to share information regarding the parish finances in order to implement the pastoral plans and priorities.

The Finance Council is distinct from the Parish Pastoral Council in the following way: An appropriate means of communication should be developed between the Parish Finance Council and the Parish Pastoral Council and this should be done so as to ensure that the Parish Finance Council does not enter into areas of policy and mission, which are the prerogative of the Parish Pastoral Council. The Parish Finance Council advises on the adequacy of resources to accomplish the mission and specific ministries of the parish.

The Parish Finance Council reviews a draft of the parish annual calendar prepared by the Parish Pastoral Council.

VII. RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER PARISH GROUPS/ COUNCILS

Although there is no formal reporting process between the Parish Finance Council and other parish groups/councils, the Finance Council should interact with parish groups/councils to study, create, and revise plans for the effective management and use of parish resources.

VIII. A CHECKLIST OF MAJOR ACTIVITIES

The Parish Finance Council should establish an annual plan of its activities. Such a checklist could include the following activities:

1. Parish Annual Report
   a. Review completed report prior to submission to the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop. The report should be complete within 45 days of the end of the fiscal year.
   b. Coordinate communication to parish community of the financial situation of the parish. Consider using printed material, oral presentations, and parish hall meetings. Report should be presented to the parish as soon as possible, but no later than 5 months after the end of the fiscal year.

2. Parish Budget Report
   a. Project and plan resources to meet specified goals.
   b. All individual program budgets are reviewed: church, elementary school, religious education, and auxiliary groups.
   c. Share proposed budget with the Parish Pastoral Council and the general parish.
   d. Complete and submit to (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop as required.
3. Financial Review
   a. Financial report and significant financial facts should be prepared for every meeting.
   b. Budget amounts are compared to the actual income and expenditures to monitor results in comparison to budget projections.
   c. Year over year trend reports for programs, revenues, and expenses are analyzed to plan corrective action.
   d. At least quarterly, a representative from the Finance Council should review the general ledger detail and reconciliation of cash and investment accounts.

4. Accounting / internal control systems / best practices
   a. Review accounting system to determine if it produces current and accurate financial records.
   b. Ensure that appropriate risk management practices are in place.
   c. Identify all parish bank accounts, not just known operating accounts. Confirm that these account balances are reflected in the financial statements. Determine if the number of accounts can be reduced to ease administration.
   d. Review current bank account signature cards and account reconciliations for all parish accounts on a regular basis.
   e. Review the separation of duties, to the extent possible, of personnel involved in the finances of the parish.
   f. Review any statements received for any parish account related to a credit or debit card, store account, purchase order, purchasing card or other similar instrument. Verify that purchases had the necessary approvals, were for a parish (not personal) purpose and are coded to the proper general ledger account.

5. Auxiliary groups
   a. Review budget and upcoming activities for the next year.
   b. Review revenue and expenses along with bank account reconciliations.
   c. Meet with the groups to acknowledge their contribution of time, talent, and treasure. Reinforce financial accountability from various groups to the parish.

6. Compliance Oversight
   a. Taxable Activities: review support documentation and tax filings for payroll taxes (including W-2’s), bingo, pull-tabs, and concession sales.
   b. Licensing Activities: review support documentation and filings for bingo, pull-tabs, carnivals, raffles and other events that may be restricted by the local municipality.
   c. Payments for Services Provided to Parish: Confirm that 1099 Federal forms are complete and filed for independent contractors.
   d. Deductions from parish employee pay: Confirm that payroll deductions are submitted on a timely basis to the benefit providers.
   e. Confirm that all compensation to employees and contractors, including bonuses or gifts, is reflected appropriately on the respective form W-2 (for employees) or form 1099 (for independent contractors).
Appendix A

References – Canons 1281-1288

Canon 1281 §1 – With due regard for the prescriptions of their statutes, administrators invalidly posit acts which go beyond the limits and procedures of ordinary administration unless they first obtain written authority from the ordinary.

§2 – The acts which go beyond the limits and procedures of ordinary administration are to be defined in the statutes; if, however, the statutes do not mention such acts, it is within the competence of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop to determine such acts for persons subject to him after he has heard the finance council.

§3 – Unless and to the extent that it is to its own advantage, a juridic person is not held to answer for acts invalidly posited by its administrators. A juridic person, however, is responsible for acts illegitimately but validly posited by its administrators with due regard for the right to sue or to have recourse against administrators who have damaged it.

Canon 1282 – All clerics or lay persons who through a legitimate title take part in the administration of ecclesiastical goods are bound to fulfill their duties in the name of the Church and in accord with the norm of law.

Canon 1283 – Before administrators take office: 1° – they must take an oath before the ordinary or his delegate that they will be efficient and faithful administrators; 2° – they are to prepare, sign and subsequently renew an accurate and detailed inventory of immovable goods, movable goods, either precious or of significant cultural value, or other goods along with a description and appraisal of them; 3° – one copy of this inventory is to be kept in the archives of the administration; the other, in the curial archives; any change whatever which the patrimony may undergo is to be noted on each copy.

Canon 1284 §1 – All administrators are bound to fulfill their office with the diligence of a good housekeeper.

§2 – For this reason they must:

1° – take care that none of the goods entrusted to their care is in any way lost or damaged and take out insurance policies for this purpose, insofar as such is necessary;
2° – take care that the ownership of ecclesiastical goods is safeguarded through civilly valid methods;
3° – observe the prescriptions of both canon and civil law or those imposed by the founder, donor or legitimate authority: they must especially be on guard lest the Church be harmed through the non-observance of civil laws;
4° – accurately collect the revenues and income of goods when they are legally due, safeguard them once collected and apply them according to the intention of the founder or according to legitimate norms;
5° – pay the interest on a loan or mortgage when it is due and take care that the capital debt itself is repaid in due time;
6° – with the consent of the ordinary invest the money which is left over after expenses and which can be profitably allocated for the goals of the juridic person;
7° – keep well-ordered books of receipts and expenditures;
8° – draw up a report on their administration at the end of each year;  
9° – duly arrange and keep in a suitable and safe archive the documents and deeds upon which are  
   based the rights of the Church or the institution to its goods; deposit authentic copies of them in the  
   archive of the curia when it can be done conveniently;  

§3 – It is strongly recommended that administrators prepare annual budgets of receipts and expenditures;  
   however, it is left to particular law to issue regulations concerning such budgets and to determine more  
   precisely how they are to be presented.  

Canon 1285 – Within the limits of ordinary administration only, it is permissible for administrators to make  
   donations for purposes of piety or Christian charity from movable goods which do not pertain to the stable  
   patrimony.  

Canon 1286 – Administrators of goods: 1° – are to observe meticulously the civil laws pertaining to labor  
   and social policy according to Church principles in the employment of workers; 2° – are to pay employees  
   a just and decent wage so that they may provide appropriately for their needs and those of their family.  

Canon 1287 §1 – Both clerical and lay administrators of any ecclesiastical goods whatsoever which have  
   not been legitimately exempted from the governing power of the (Arch)diocesan (Arch)bishop are bound  
   by their office to present the local ordinary with an annual report, which in turn he is to present to the  
   finance council for its consideration; any contrary custom is reprobated.  

§2 – Administrators are to render an account to the faithful concerning the goods offered by the faithful to  
   the Church, according to norms to be determined by particular law.  

Canon 1288 – Administrators are neither to initiate nor to contest a lawsuit on behalf of a public juridic  
   person in civil court unless they obtain the written permission of their own ordinary.  

Definition: A juridic person is an artificial person constituted by competent ecclesiastical authority for an  
   apostolic purpose, with a capacity for continuous existence and with canonical rights and duties like those  
   of a natural person. Like a civil-law corporation, it is a legal construct which can and must be conceived of  
   apart from the natural persons who constitute it, administer it, or for whose benefit it exists. Of its nature,  
   a juridic person is perpetual and, once established, it can outlast all natural persons or material goods which  
   formed it.
Appendix B

RESOURCES and REFERENCE INFORMATION

Besides these brief guidelines, there are many other materials available on church finances, much of it on the web. Useful information can be found on such websites as the National Leadership Roundtable on Church Finances, the Archdiocese of Chicago and other (Arch)diocesan websites. Some of the documents you might find helpful are listed below.

Archdiocese of Chicago:


Catholic Finance Corporation:

Various policies and guidelines on parish finances and parish capital projects can be found at www.catholicfinance.org especially under the ‘Information and Resources’ tab.

Archdiocese of St. Louis:


Sample D: Internal Control Questionnaire

Parish _______________________ School ____________________
City, State ____________________ For the year ended ________________

This questionnaire is to be completed by each parish and school annually. Each question must be answered, and "no" answers must be explained in the comment section next to the question. If you are in doubt as the meaning of a question, please contact the (Arch)diocesan Finance Office for assistance. This completed questionnaire must be submitted to the (Arch)diocesan Finance Office within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year, with the required acknowledgment signatures affixed.

(X) appropriate box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

GENERAL

Does the parish have a Finance Council, established and operating in accordance with Canon Law, and the policies issued by the (Arch)diocese?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Do you have a copy of the current (Arch)diocesan Financial Policies and Procedures?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Have the Pastor, Business Manager and at least one Finance Council member read the (Arch)diocesan Financial Policies and Procedures?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Is the parish in compliance with every policy as included in the current (Arch)diocesan Financial Policies and Procedures?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Is access to the general ledger and supporting subsidiary ledgers restricted to authorized personnel?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Are subsidiary ledgers maintained and reconciled to the general ledger on a monthly basis?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

FINANCIAL REPORTING

Has the budget been submitted at the beginning of the fiscal year in accordance with (Arch)diocesan policy?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Have interim financial reports been submitted in accordance with (Arch)diocesan policy during the fiscal year?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Have year-end financial reports been submitted in accordance with (Arch)diocesan policy?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Has the parish/school given the parishioners a complete financial report for the year?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |

Does the Finance Council review budget vs. actual variances on a regular basis, and make budget adjustments as necessary?  

| ___ | ___ | ______ |
Does the Finance Council review and approve interim and yearend financial statements on a timely basis?

Have all auxiliary groups been informed of (Arch)diocesan and parish financial policies, and are they in compliance with them?

ACCOUNTING SYSTEMS

Do you have written procedures for the following accounting systems?

Cash Receipts; Cash Disbursements; Personnel; Management; Payroll; Purchasing; Mass Stipends and Stole Fees?

BANK ACCOUNTS

Are bank accounts established, maintained and reported in accordance with (Arch)diocesan financial policies?

Is the pastor an authorized signer on all bank accounts, including all auxiliary activity bank accounts?

Are all auxiliary activity bank statements received directly at the Parish and reviewed by parish personnel?

Are all authorized signers on bank accounts in accordance with (Arch)diocesan policy?

Are unopened, monthly bank statements delivered directly to the pastor, or his designee, someone who is independent of the recording of receipts and disbursements into the general ledger, and is the statement opened and its contents reviewed by this person?

Are monthly bank reconciliations performed for all bank accounts, by someone who is independent of recording cash transactions, and are all reconciling differences resolved on a timely basis?

Are bank reconciliations reviewed by someone other than the preparer on a periodic basis?

On a test basis, are endorsements on cleared disbursement checks compared to the payee on the front of the check?

Are disbursement checks indicated as outstanding for more than 60 days investigated and resolved?

Does the Finance Council approve the opening and closing of all bank accounts?

Does someone other than the Bookkeeper review the monthly activity in the savings accounts with the (Arch)diocese, and compare such activity to the activity posted in the general ledger?
Are funds received for Mass stipends recorded separately from other funds, and a record kept of all Masses said in accordance with Canonical and (Arch)diocesan requirements?

Are funds in excess of a 60 day operating requirement transferred to the (Arch)diocesan Savings & Loan Program for investment?

CASH RECEIPTS

Are responsibilities for collection and deposit preparation functions segregated from those for recording cash receipts and general ledger entries?

Is the parish/school in compliance with (Arch)diocesan policies with respect to cash receipts?

Has the parish established offertory count procedures in accordance with (Arch)diocesan guidelines, and are these procedures being followed?

Is an envelope process for offertory in place, and are periodic statements sent to parishioners giving them a record of their contributions to the parish?

If a parishioner disputes their offertory statement, is the dispute resolved by someone other than personnel who handle and record cash receipts?

Are all cash receipts deposited and recorded in the general ledger in the proper account on a timely basis (preferably, daily)?

Is all cash received deposited intact, and no funds removed from the deposit?

Is a subsidiary record of all accounts receivable kept, outstanding amounts followed-up on, and is the record reconciled to the general ledger on a monthly basis?

Is a restrictive endorsement placed upon each incoming check when it is received?

Are records of cash received, including offertory, compared to bank validated deposit slips on a daily basis?

Are "NSF" checks followed-up immediately, resolved and adjusted as necessary?

Are restricted donations recorded as restricted, and used only for the restricted purpose imposed by the donor? Is a record kept of the use of the restricted funds?
Are endowed funds received recorded as endowment, and is only the investment income expended for ministry use?  

|  |  |  |  |

Are all bequests and trusts where the parish/school is a beneficiary handled in accordance with Canonical and (Arch)diocesan requirements for the acceptance and receipt of such gifts?  

|  |  |  |  |

**CASH DISBURSEMENTS**

Is the parish/school in compliance with (Arch)diocesan policies with respect to cash disbursements?  

|  |  |  |  |

Do procedures exist to insure that disbursements are made only for budgeted matters, or have specific Finance Council approval, and to insure that all disbursements are approved?  

|  |  |  |  |

Is cash disbursed only upon receipt of properly approved original vendor invoices, or properly approved check requests?  

|  |  |  |  |

Do check signers review support documents before signing checks?  

|  |  |  |  |

Do procedures exist to insure that all disbursements are properly classified in the general ledger?  

|  |  |  |  |

Are unissued, blank checks under tight control and accounted for?  

|  |  |  |  |

Is the drawing of checks to cash or bearer prohibited?  

|  |  |  |  |

Is the use of facsimile signature stamps prohibited?  

|  |  |  |  |

Are credit cards issued and used only in accordance with (Arch)diocesan policy?  

|  |  |  |  |

Is the use of debit cards prohibited?  

|  |  |  |  |

Are all expenses paid when due, and are all vendor discounts taken?  

|  |  |  |  |

If a discretionary account exists, is the activity reported on the parish financial reports? Is confidentiality maintained for the funds disbursed?  

|  |  |  |  |

Are "voided" checks destroyed by someone independent of the cash disbursement recording function, and is the voided check recorded as voided immediately?  

|  |  |  |  |

Have funds collected for National and Special collections been remitted to the (Arch)diocese within 30 days of the collections?  

|  |  |  |  |
PERSONNEL AND PAYROLL:

Is the parish/school in compliance with (Arch)diocesan policy with respect to personnel management and payroll issues, including USCCB and (Arch)diocesan policy with respect to Safe Environment Protection?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are complete personnel files maintained for all employees?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are all employees properly classified as "exempt" or "nonexempt"?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are all payments to individuals, other than to Religious, and other than for properly accounted for employee expense reimbursements, reported on IRS Form W-2?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are the required tax withholdings made from individuals paychecks and remitted to the taxing authority in accordance with their rules and regulations?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are all payments made to and for Religious who are subject to policy and IRS regulations?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Is Form 1099 issued to independent contractors, in accordance with IRS regulations?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are all payroll tax returns filed, and payroll taxes remitted, in accordance with IRS, State and Local regulations, on a timely basis?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are all (Arch)diocesan clergy recognized and reported as employees for Federal Income Tax purposes, but as Self Employed individuals for Social Security Tax purposes?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are clergy Mass stipends and stole fees reported to the IRS as income in accordance with (Arch)diocesan policy?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are the eligibility requirements for all (Arch)diocesan employee benefit plans carefully observed with respect to each employee so that no one will be improperly included or excluded?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are withholdings from checks to employees for contributory participations in (Arch)diocesan employee benefit plans remitted to the plans on a timely basis?  

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Acknowledgment

We, the undersigned, acknowledge the following concerning this questionnaire:

1. We are familiar with these internal controls as recommended by the (Arch)diocese.
2. Where we have answered "no" to a control question, we have explained above why it was not practical or appropriate to follow the internal control, and that we have implemented an alternative control procedure which conforms as closely as possible to the spirit of the control procedure as established by the (Arch)diocese.
3. We have met to review and discuss all of the above internal controls, and represent that they are functioning as required except as indicated otherwise.
4. We are not aware of any parish or school checking, savings or other accounts that have been omitted from the accounting records and our financial reports.

SIGNATURES:

Pastor

Principal

Business/Office Manager

Bookkeeper
Sample E: Parish Accounting Policies & Financial Reporting Standards

Objectives

The primary objectives of parish accounting and financial reporting are as follows:

- to accurately and completely record, summarize and report the financial activity of the parish on a timely basis;
- to summarize financial transactions in standard financial reports issued on a timely basis following each month-end;
- to provide a "benchmark" in conjunction with the financial statements in the form of a budget so that readers of the statements have a basis of comparison to assess financial activity.

Accounting Policies

Financial activity is to be recorded primarily using the accrual basis of accounting, according to the following guidelines:

Receipts/Revenue

- Revenue is to be recorded when earned. Generally that is when funds are received. However, there can be instances where this is not the case, including:
  - Advance Payments: Receipts representing deposits for future services to be rendered by the parish, such as the purchase of columbarium niches and cemetery plots, and tuition payments received prior to the period in which the educational activities will take place, are to be recorded as a liability (unearned income) and reclassified to income when the revenue is earned.

Custodial Receipts: Receipts over which the parish has no discretion as to their use represent custodial transactions and are to be recorded as a liability (custodial obligations) until paid. This includes receipts from national and (Arch)diocesan collections and payments for Mass intentions.

- Pledges: An unconditional promise to give should be recorded as revenue upon receipt of the pledge.

Expenses/Liabilities

- Expenses are to be recorded when incurred (upon receipt of merchandise and when services are rendered) and recorded as a liability (accounts payable) until paid. When teacher salaries are paid over the course of the school year and following summer, deferred salaries, taxes and benefits are to be expensed and recorded as a liability (accrued salaries, taxes and benefits) over the course of the school year. Upon payment of the deferred salaries, taxes and benefits, the accrual is to be charged.
• Expenses Paid in Advance: Expenditures representing deposits for merchandise on order and services under contract are to be recorded as a prepaid asset. Upon receipt of the merchandise and completion of services, the appropriate expense account is to be debited and the prepaid asset account credited.

Reimbursable Expenditures

• Payments that will be reimbursed are to be recorded to accounts receivable until reimbursement is received. This includes sales taxes paid to a vendor that are eligible for refund from the state Department of Revenue.

Capital Assets

• Property and equipment is recorded at cost when purchased and at estimated fair value when received via donation. Expenditures for fixed assets with a cost >$2,500 and a useful life of more than one year are to be capitalized and reported as an asset on the balance sheet. Donations of fixed assets with a fair market value >$2,500 and a useful life of more than one year are to be recorded by debiting the fixed asset account and crediting the in-kind donations account. To determine whether an expenditure is a capital item or should be recorded as a repair, consider whether the expenditure extends the asset’s life. For example, replacing the entire roof on a building extends the life of the building and, therefore, represents a capital asset, while replacing a portion of the shingles damaged by a storm is a repair. Similarly, repaving a parking lot extends the life of the lot and, therefore, represents a capital asset, while filling pot holes in the lot is a repair.

Debt

• The principal amount of all loans payable is to be recorded as a liability (notes payable) and reported on the balance sheet. Principal payments are to be recorded to the notes payable account.

Net Assets

• Net assets and revenues, expenses, gains and losses are classified based on the existence or absence of donor-imposed restrictions. Accordingly, net assets consist of:
  • Unrestricted
  • Temporarily Restricted
  • Permanently Restricted

Financial Reporting

Reporting to the Parish - A financial report is to be made to the parish council at least four times annually. In addition, a mid-year and year-end financial report is to be presented to the entire parish community. At a minimum, this report should consist of a complete Statement of Activities and complete Statement of Financial Position. The report should be made available to parishioners within 60 days after the end of each period. In addition, the annual budget is to be presented to the entire parish community within 60 days after the beginning of the fiscal year.
The following standard reports are to be issued to the pastor, Finance Council and appropriate managers at the close of each month:

1. **Statement of Activities by Cost Center** – this report summarizes income statement activity by cost center, listing the totals for all cost centers. The standard column headings are:
   - Current Month Actual
   - Year-to-Date Actual (from July of the current fiscal year thru the current accounting month)
   - Annual Budget
   - Annual Budget Remaining (variance of the annual budget from the YTD actual. Positive numbers are favorable variances, while numbers in brackets are unfavorable)
   - Year-to-Date as a % of Annual Budget

2. **Statement of Activities by Account (all Cost Centers Combined)** – this report summarizes income statement activity by natural account classification (e.g. all office supplies in one line, regardless of the cost center). The standard column headings are:
   - Current Month Actual
   - Year-to-Date Actual (from July of the current fiscal year thru the current accounting month)
   - Annual Budget
   - Annual Budget Remaining (variance of the annual budget from the YTD actual. Positive numbers are favorable variances, while numbers in brackets are unfavorable)
   - Year-to-Date as a % of Annual Budget

3. **Statement of Financial Position** – This is a balance sheet listing all active main accounts. The standard column headings are:
   - Current Period Balance (this is the balance as of the last day of the current accounting month)
   - Prior Year Balance (this is the balance from the previous year, as of the same month as the current accounting month)

4. **Restricted Accounts** – This is a roll-forward of restricted and endowment gifts showing the balances at the beginning of the year, monthly debits and credits, year-to-date debits and credits, and the ending year-to-date balances. The standard column headings are:
   - Beginning Balance (Balance at the beginning of the fiscal year)
   - Month Credits (additions in the current accounting month)
   - Month Debits (reductions in the current accounting month)
   - YTD Credits (additions from beginning of the fiscal year through the current accounting month)
   - YTD Debits (reductions from beginning of the fiscal year through the current accounting month)
   - Ending balance (balance as of the last day of the current accounting month)
5. Cost Center Statement of Activities – this report summarizes income statement activity by natural account classification for a particular cost center. The standard column headings are:
   • Current Month Actual
   • Year-to-Date Actual (from July of the current fiscal year thru the current accounting month)
   • Annual Budget
   • Annual Budget Remaining (variance of the annual budget from the YTD actual. Positive numbers are favorable variances, while numbers in brackets are unfavorable)
   • Year-to-Date as a % of Annual Budget

This report should be generated for all cost centers with significant activity.

BUDGETING

Prior to the beginning of the fiscal year a financial budget for the upcoming fiscal year is to be prepared. The finance council should participate in developing the annual budget, with input from parish commissions and department heads. The finance council should recommend the final budget for approval by the parish council and pastor. They should also participate in the communication of the annual budget to the parish community.

The budget is the plan of revenues and expenditures for the upcoming year. It is to be prepared in accordance with the chart of accounts. A line-item amount is to be budgeted for each revenue and expenditure account. During the fiscal year, the pastor and finance council should review actual revenues and expenditures against budgeted amounts on a regular basis. Any material variance should be investigated and resolved as soon as possible; unfavorable actual-to-budget variances should be addressed by implementing offsetting measures.

* * * * *
Appendix A – Financial Statements and Notes – Samples

The following Accounting Standards Codification subtopics establish standards for general purpose external financial statements provided by a not-for-profit entity:

a. ASC 958-205: Presentation of Financial Statements
b. ASC 958-210: Balance Sheet
c. ASC 958-225: Income Statement
d. ASC 958-230: Statement of Cash Flows

Even though ASC Topic 958 specifies certain requirements, including the classification of net assets based upon the existence or absence of donor imposed restrictions, it does allow the organization a certain degree of flexibility in their presentation of financial information.

In that context, the following links are provided to actual financial statements issued by various (Arch)dioceses based upon various factors including, size of the (Arch)diocesan population, geographic location, and function of (Arch)diocesan entity. The links to financial statements included herein address the myriad of functions that various (arch)(Arch)diocesan administrations oversee and administer, such as, Catholic Charities, a deposit and loan corporation, cemeteries, foundations, and other related organizations. The appendix is designed to be used as a guide to various financial statement presentation and disclosure options for similar entities within (Arch)dioceses.

LARGE (ARCH)DIOCESES:

Archdiocese of Chicago
https://www.archchicago.org/news_releases/annual_report.shtm

Diocese of Orange

MEDIUM (ARCH)DIOCESES:

Diocese of Davenport

Archdiocese of Kansas City (Kansas)

SMALL (ARCH)DIOCESES:

Diocese of Boise

Diocese of Salt Lake City
Appendix B – Resources

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)—Promulgates auditing standards for CPAs in the United States and is also a source of additional guidance on application of accounting standards. Includes the Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC). Website: www.aicpa.org. Address: 1211 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10036.

Association of Certified Fraud Examiners—Offers resources to help organizations implement fraud protection environment and measures to reduce risk of fraud. Website: www.acfenet.com http://www.acfe.com/

Canon Law Society of America (CLSA)—A professional association whose members are dedicated to the promotion of the study and application of canon law in the Roman Catholic Church. Website: www.clsa.org. Address: The Hecker Center, Suite 111, 3025 Fourth Street, NE, Washington, DC 20017-1102, USA. Website: http://www.clsa.org/

Conference for Catholic Facility Management (CCFM)—provides a forum and a network for persons having responsibility for (Arch)diocesan or religious-owned buildings and/or properties. Address: P.O. Box 618146, Chicago, IL 60661. Website: www.ccfm.net.

Church Law & Tax Report—A review of legal and tax developments affecting ministers and churches. Published bimonthly by Christian Ministry Resources, P.O. Box 1098, Matthews, NC, 28106. Website: http://www.churchlawandtax.com/cltr/

Diocesan Fiscal Management Conference (DFMC)—"Provides fiscal and administrative expertise and professional services to the local and national Church." Address: 4727 East Bell Road, Suite 45-358, Phoenix AZ 85032. Website: www.dfmconf.org.

Diocesan Information Systems Conference (DISC)—maintains an up-to-date listing of financial and other software used by member (Arch)dioceses throughout the United States. Website: www.discinfo.org

Ethics Resource Center—provides expertise and services to strengthen ethical leadership. Website: www.ethics.org


Institute of Management Accountants—Predominately for "for profit" organizations, but, their financial management resources still recommended for use in most (Arch)dioceses. Website: www.imanet.org


Information Systems Audit and Control Association—Offers resources to aid in automated systems environment, structure and controls. Website: www.isaca.org
National Association of Church Personnel Administrators (NACPA)—Offers resources for use in church personnel management. Address: 100 E. Eighth St., Cincinnati, OH 45202-3134. Website: http://www.nacpa.org/live/


National Federation of Priests' Council (NFPC)—Offers Income Taxes for Priests Only by Scott Hoselton, C.P.A. Website NFPC.org. Address: 1337 W. Ohio Street, Chicago, IL 60622. Website: http://nfpc.org/

Practitioners Publishing Company (PPC)—Offers a variety of publications, including Guide to Preparing Nonprofit Financial Statements, 990 Deskbook, and Audits of Nonprofit Organizations. Address: P.O. Box 966, Fort Worth, TX 76101-0966. Website: www.ppcnet.com.

Society for Human Resource Management—Offers resources for use in personnel management: Website: www.shrm.org

United States Conference of Catholic Bishops (USCCB)—Offers this manual and Diocesan Internal Controls: A Framework (available from USCCB Publishing), as well as a variety of resources from the Office of General Counsel. Address: 3211 Fourth Street NE, Washington, DC 20017-1194. Phone: USCCB Publishing, 800-235-8722; OGC or other offices, 202-541-3000. Website: www.usccb.org.

United States Office of Management and Budget (OMB)—Issues rules for entities receiving federal assistance and for audits of those entities. Address: 725 17th Street NW, Washington, DC 20503. Website: www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants